

# **A Biblical View of the Past, Present, & Future**

## **‘A Prophetic Odyssey’**

by  
Robert E. Schoenle

All quoted Scripture is from *The New Scofield Reference Bible*  
Copyright 1967 by Oxford University Press, Inc.  
Reprinted by permission.

Copyright 2019 by Robert E. Schoenle. All rights reserved.  
18138 Lake Worth Blvd., Port Charlotte, FL 33948

Web Site: [www.endtimewarnings.org](http://www.endtimewarnings.org)

# Table of Contents

Declaration	Page iii-iv
Dedication	Page v
Prologue	Page 1-16
A Biblical View of the Past	Page 17-40
A Biblical View of the Present	Page 41-62
A Biblical View of the Future	Page 63-80
Epilogue	Page 81-92
Appendix	Page 93-115

# Declaration

‘Messiah’ is a Hebrew word.  
‘Christos’ is a Greek word.  
‘Christ’ is an English word.  
All three of these words mean  
***The Anointed One.***

The Holy Bible is called the *Word of God*, because it is a faithful record of everything that the LORD [self-existent One] wanted mankind to know as a whole, even including those things that are evil and degenerate. The original [autograph] was written by men inspired by *God, the Holy Spirit*, the third Personality of the triune Godhead that is commonly referred to as the “Holy Trinity.” The Holy Bible is infallible and inerrant making it free from any error concerning the supernatural, science, and history. Thus, the Holy Bible is the sole source of truth on planet Earth! The substance of the Holy Bible has been preserved for us and is complete. We are not to look for the writing or giving of any extra-biblical revelation.

(Ex. 17:14; Dt. 4:2; 5:22; 12:32-13:5; 28:58-62; 31:24-26; Josh. 1:7-8; 8:31-35; Ps. 12:6; 18:30; 19:7-9; 119:140, 142, 151; Prov. 30:5-6; Isa. 40:8; Mt. 4:1-11; 24:35; Lk. 16:29-31; 24:25-27; Jn. 5:39, 46-47; 17:12, 14, 17; 19:24; Acts 17:29; Rom. 1:18-20; 9:9-17; 15:4; 1 Cor. 2:9-14; Col.2:9; 2 Tim. 3:16-17; Heb. 4:12; 2 Pet. 1:21; 3:15-16; 1 Jn. 4:1; Rev. 1:1-3, 10-11; 22:6-10, 18-19).

The *Word of God* advises all to:  
“Search the Scriptures” (Jn. 5:39, 46-47; Acts 17:10-12)  
“Study the Scriptures” (Prov. 15:28; 1 Tim. 4:13; 2 Tim. 2:15)  
“Meditate upon the Scriptures” (Josh. 1:7-8; Ps. 119; 1 Tim. 3:13-17)

**The Holy Bible. Nothing More. Nothing Less. Nothing Else.**

## **Bible prophecy is simply “prerecorded” history authored by God!**

*Therefore, why not believe what the Lord Jesus Christ  
said?*

1. “. . . for there is nothing covered that shall not be revealed;  
and hidden, that shall not be known.”  
(Mt. 10:26)
  2. “For there is nothing hidden, which shall not be manifested; neither  
was any thing kept secret, but that it should come [to light].”  
(Mk. 4:22)
  3. “But take heed; behold, I have foretold you all things.”  
(Mk. 13:23)
  4. “For nothing is secret, that shall not be made manifest; neither *any  
thing* hidden, that shall not be known and come [to light].”  
(Lk. 8:17)
  5. “For there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed;  
neither hidden, that shall not be known.”  
(Lk. 12:2)
  6. “. . . I spoke openly to the world; I ever taught in the synagogue,  
and in the temple, where the Jews always resort;  
and in secret have I said nothing.”  
(Jn. 18:20)
- “. . . the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.” (Rev. 19:10b)

# Dedication

This treatise  
is dedicated to  
the 144,000 Jewish men  
who have been chosen by God  
to preach the  
Good News  
of the coming  
*Kingdom of Christ.*

These 144,000 Jewish men  
will preach this message  
throughout the world  
during the 2,520 days  
that precede the  
Second Coming [2nd Advent]  
of the  
Lord Jesus Christ  
to planet Earth.

These 144,000 Jewish men are alive,  
at this time!

Revelation 7:1-8; 14:1-5  
Matthew 24:14, 21-24

# Prologue

The teachings of biblical Christianity have always required Christians and non-Christians alike to question and to challenge whatever they are told or taught and to demand evidence that will support whatever is being presented to them (Acts 17:10-11; 1 Jn. 4:1). Christianity has never been based upon blind faith, or speculation, but on logical arguments and evidence that support and prove its doctrines to be true. Those who trust in the Lord Jesus Christ as their personal Savior have always been required to be *thinkers*!

In contrast, those who believe in the man-made religions of atheism, agnosticism, evolutionism, and humanism must be identified as being *non-thinkers*! This opinion is based upon their decision to believe that from nothing came something even though they know nothing plus nothing equals nothing. They simply choose not to believe it. Those who support these illogical and irrational religions ignore the fact that their beliefs are based solely on speculation and blind faith, since they have no witnesses to their rendition of the creation of matter or the ability to reproduce “something from nothing.”

Since these non-thinkers cannot be ‘definitive’ about their beliefs, they must use qualifying terms such as ‘might be’ or ‘could have’ or ‘maybe’ and other such terms to support what they believe and teach. The proponents of these man-made religions usually teach that there are no absolutes and they are absolutely sure this is true. The irony is that the advocates of these man-made religions view themselves as being intellectually superior, even though they are unable to answer the simplest of questions such as, “What came first, the chicken or the egg?” They also view those who disagree with them as being stupid. However, the *Holy Bible* teaches, “The fool hath said in his heart, *There is no God . . .*” (Ps. 14:1; 53:1). The English words *foolish* and *moron* are both translated from the Greek word ‘*moros*.’

The word *theology* means, “the study of God” and the word *eschatology* means, “the study of future things.” In our day and age, many professing Christians seem to frown upon one who uses logic or is logical while studying either of these subjects. Their attitude seems to be that if one uses logic or tries to be logical in attempting to understand the Holy Scriptures, they are either unspiritual, worldly, or lacking in faith. However, God said, “Come now, and let us reason together . . .” (Isa. 1:18a). The apostles used logical arguments that were based upon the Scriptures to prove the Lord Jesus Christ was indeed the promised Messiah of the *Old Testament* who had risen from the dead (Isa. 7:14; 9:6-7; 52:13-53:12; Mic. 5:2; Acts 1:1-9; 2:24, 31; 4:10; Rom. 4:24-25; 6:3-4). They also argued that salvation was to be acquired solely by faith alone in the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ for both Jew and Gentile alike (Acts 4:12; 15:1-29; 17:10-12, 16-34; 19:8-10; 22:1-21; 23:6-10; 1 Cor. 15:1-4). Not to believe so would be illogical according to the holy Scriptures!

Those who are looking forward to the *Second Coming* [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth are unaware that the assembly of believers called His bride (2 Cor. 11:2; Rev. 19:7-9), His body (Rom. 12:5; 1 Cor. 12:12-14; Eph. 1:22-23), and His Church (Acts 2:47; 20:28) were ONLY to look forward to the return of His that is now called the “Rapture” (Lk. 12:35-48; 21:28, 34-35; Jn. 14:1-3; 1 Cor. 15:51-54; 1 Th. 4:13-18; 5:2; 2 Th. 2:1; Ti. 2:13; 1 Jn. 2:28; 3:2-3; Rev. 3:3, 10-11; 22:12-13, 20). The reason why is that those who are ‘left-behind’ after the Rapture will have to suffer through the twenty-one judgments of God upon the earth as recorded in the book of Revelation (Rev. 6:1-19:21). These people will then have reason to anticipate the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth..

I have been obsessed with the doctrine of the Rapture since becoming a born-from-above [born-again] Christian in May 1975. My obsession began when I learned that I did not have to fear being a part of or a witness to any of the horrific things I knew were going to take place because I would be “snatched-out” of the earth before the judgments of God upon the earth began. Prior to my conversion, I had absolutely no hope for the future after doing an extensive and intensive independent study of economics, politics, history, and current events for eighteen months. Fear of the future caused me to have a lump as big as a grapefruit in my throat! It was upon my learning what Bible prophecy had to say about future events and how much God loved me that caused me to trust the Lord Jesus Christ as my personal Savior who out of love for me paid in full the penalty I deserved for all of my sins against a holy God.

I also have not understood why so few Christians seem to care about both the topic and the prospect of the Rapture since this event is declared to be the blessed hope of the Church (Ti. 2:13). Most people seem unaware that this sudden *snatching away* of living human beings by the LORD [self-existent One] has taken place twice before. The first time was with Enoch (Gen. 5:24) and the second time was with Elijah (2 Ki. 2:9-11). These two men never physically died and it is for this reason I believe they will be the two witnesses from Heaven (Rev. 11:3-12) during the first half [1,260 days] of the seven years [2,520 days] that precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] to earth by the Lord Jesus Christ.

I want to know about ‘things to come’ [eschatology], according to the Holy Bible. Things such as is it possible to *know* when the Lord Jesus Christ will return in what is now referred to as the Rapture of the Church and when His Second Coming [2nd Advent] to planet Earth will take place? Thus, I am no different from the disciples Peter, James, John, and Andrew in that regard (Mt. 24:3; Mk. 13:3-4).

The Latin word, ‘revelatio,’ from which we derive the English word, *revelation*, and the Greek word, *apokalupsis*, that has been translated into the English word, *apocalypse*, all mean the “disclosure of that which was previously hidden or unknown” (Rev. 1:1) [See Amos 3:7]. The Lord Jesus Christ said three times in the last chapter of the book of Revelation (Rev. 22:7, 12, 20) that He would come QUICKLY. This word is first followed by an offer of a blessing (v. 7), then a reward (v. 12), and ends with a promise (v. 20). The English word ‘quickly’ is

translated from the Greek word, *tachy*, meaning “swift” [or] “quick” and signifies “quickly.”<sup>1</sup> As used in Revelation chapter 22, this word is **erroneously** thought to refer to the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus, when it actually refers to the Rapture. This is clear when both events are contrasted with each other:

	RAPTURE		SECOND COMING	
1	The Lord Jesus will return FOR His own	Jn. 14:1-3; 1 Th. 4:16-17; 2 Th. 2:1	The Lord Jesus will return WITH His own	Jude 14-15; Rev.19:14
2	He will return FOR His bride	Mt. 25:1-13; 2 Cor. 11:2	He will return WITH His bride	Rev. 19:7-14
3	This return will meet His bride in the AIR.	1 Th. 4:17	This return will be to planet EARTH.	Zech. 14:3-4, 9; Mt. 24:29-30, Acts 1:11
4	ONLY His bride/church will see Him.	1 Cor. 15:51-53; 1 Jn. 3:2	EVERY man, woman, and child will see Him	Mt. 24:30; 26:64; Rev. 1:7
5	TRIBULATION on earth will begin afterward	Mt. 24:21; 2 Th. 1:6-9; Rev. 6; 7:13-14	MILLENNIAL KINGDOM Age will begin afterward	Mt. 24:14; 25:31-46; Rev. 20:4
6	The saved are DELIVERED from wrath	1 Th. 1:10; 5:9	The unsaved will EXPERIENCE wrath	Rev. 6:12-17
7	THREE things must precede this event: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Great turning away from fundamental, biblical, Christian doctrines</li> <li>• Identity of Antichrist will be known</li> <li>• Israel and the world will have sense of peace and safety</li> </ul>	2 Th. 2:3; 1 Th. 5:3	THREE things must precede this event: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* The signing of a seven-year ‘defense treaty’ between Israel &amp; Antichrist</li> <li>* Antichrist will break treaty</li> <li>* War of Armageddon</li> </ul>	<p>Dan. 9:27a</p> <p>Dan. 9:27b</p> <p>Rev. 16:16; 19:11-19</p>

The Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ to earth will probably take three days from when He is first sighted in outer space to when His feet will touch down on Mount Olivet. It is during this time when EVERY eye will see Him (Mt. 24:30; Rev. 1:7). Those who are engaged in the “Battle of *Armageddon*” in the northern part of Israel in the valley of Megiddo will then have enough time to cease fighting among themselves and to redirect their

<sup>1</sup> W. E. Vine, *Vine's Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words: A Comprehensive Dictionary of the Original Greek Words with their Precise Meanings for English Readers*, (Nashville, TN: Royal Publishers, Inc. June 1989), 913.

weapons against the descending “King of Kings” (Rev. 19:11-19). Thus, there is no way the three “I come quickly” statements in Revelation 22:7, 12, 20 may be applicable to the Second Coming [2nd Advent]. It is also why the last prayer in the Holy Bible is in regards to the Rapture, “Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus” (Rev. 22:20b).

The Lord Jesus Christ reprimanded those of His day for not knowing the *signs* which referred to His first advent to planet Earth (Mt.16:1-3; Lk. 12:54-56; 19:41-44; Jn. 1:11). Thus, why would He not expect the same from those who are members of His Church in regards to when He will return to *snatch them out* at the Rapture? The same should also be true for those who become believers AFTER the Rapture in regard to His Second Coming to the earth!

As a watchman it is my duty to declare that signs are for believers and nonbelievers alike (Ezek. 33:1-6). Signs are sometimes given to show a *covenant* between God and man (Gen. 9:8-17; 17:11) or to reveal the ‘will’ of God, as in the case of Aaron’s rod (Num. 17:5-10), or to prove that the God of Israel is the one true God, as with Elijah (1 Ki. 18:21-24, 37-39). Signs are also given by God to bring men to a saving belief in the Lord Jesus Christ as their personal Savior (Mk. 16:20; Jn. 20:30-31). Signs from God, regardless of the reason given, will always authenticate the Word of God!

Signs were recorded by the prophets of the *Old Testament* to reveal the timing of the “First Advent” and in the *New Testament* for when the Rapture and the Second Coming [2nd Advent] to planet Earth by the Lord Jesus Christ would take place. Thus, it may be said that God has never played “gotcha” with mankind. The most obvious and significant signs of these “last days” were the rebirth of Israel on May 14, 1948, and the liberation of Jerusalem by Israel in June 1967, and the *War of Yom Kippur* on October 6, 1973 when Egypt and Syria attacked Israel, who won an overwhelming victory against their enemies. The *Feast of a Day of Atonement* is the most solemn assembly by the people of Israel for repentance and forgiveness of their sins under the *Law of Moses* (Lev. 16; 23:26-32; Num. 29:7-11). It was on this hallowed feast day in 1973 when Israel was attacked by Syria and Egypt!

There will be three groups of people living on the earth when the Rapture does takes place! They are: **1. Non-Christians** **2. Professing Christians** **3. True Christians** with many of them unaware that the Rapture is about to take place (Mt. 24:42-51; 25:1-13). All true Christians are expected to be found doing the “will” of God when the Rapture does take place (Mt. 5:13-16; 10:24-27, 32-33, 38-39; 24:46; Mk. 4:21-25; Lk. 7:36-50; 8:16-18; 11:33-36; 12:35-40, 42-48; 16:1-13; 19:11-27). A faithful steward is required to be found doing the will of God (Mt. 25:14-30; 1 Cor. 4:2 and will be blessed for doing so.

The Jewish people at the First Coming [1st Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth had to ignore more than 300 prophecies in the *Old Testament* not to know of it (Isa. 7:14; 9:6; Mic. 5:2; Mt. 16:1-3; Lk. 12:56; 19:41-44). The same is now true in our current day and age when many true and ‘professing’ Christians are sound asleep and are totally unaware of the

soon return of the Lord Jesus Christ to take His bride to Heaven! This is why Peter wrote of the days prior to the Rapture “ . . . there shall come in the last days scoffers . . . saying, Where is the promise of his coming? For since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as *they were* from the beginning of the creation. For this they willingly are ignorant . . . ” (2 Pet. 3:3-5). Then there are these words of warning, “. . . remember ye the words which were spoken before by the apostles . . . How they told you there should be mockers in the last days . . . ” (Jude 17-18). This could only be said by those living in the days prior to the Rapture and not before the 2nd Advent of the Lord Jesus Christ (Mt. 24:21)!

God has always made His *will* known to mankind (Gen. 2:15-17; 3:11, 17)! It has always been the responsibility of mankind to comply with the “will” of God beginning with Adam and Eve. Nowhere in the holy Scriptures do we read that Eve sinned when she ate the forbidden fruit. The reason being that Eve was *deceived* by Satan, which caused her to eat the forbidden fruit (Gen. 3:4-5; 2 Cor. 11:3; 1 Tim. 2:14). Adam, however, deliberately disobeyed God when he ate the “forbidden” fruit (Gen. 3:6; Rom. 5:12; 1 Tim. 2:14). Thus, a sinful or rebellious nature towards God became part of Adam’s DNA which he then passed on to all of his progeny (Job 25:4; Ps. 51:5). This rebellious nature continues to be passed on by Adam’s *male* descendants. This is why the Lord Jesus could be born of a woman and yet be sinless (Gen. 3:15; Mt. 1:16, 18; Lk. 1:34-35; Jn. 1:1-3, 14), since He was born of a virgin without having a human father. [Sin [Heb. hata’ah; Gr. hamartia; “a falling away from or missing the right path or the mark]!

The “will” of God was known by Cain and Able, as to what the sacrifice they were required to offer to the LORD [self-existent One] should be (Gen. 4:1-15). It was to be a lamb without blemish (Lev. 17:11; Heb. 9:22). Abel complied in obedience to the expressed will of God (Gen. 4:2, 4) by his faith in God (Heb. 11:1-4). Abel demonstrated his faith by what he offered to God. The offering made by Cain, in contrast, revealed a deliberate disobedience toward the expressed “will” of God (Gen. 4:1, 3, 5-7). Cain then added to his sin of disobedience when he murdered his brother Able (Gen. 4:8; 1 Jn. 3:12). Thus, Cain was the very first *religious* man (Rom. 4:5)! All “man-made religions” are founded by men and women, like Cain, who will not obey the “will” of God. What they “offer” to God is what they want to and not what God requested. These people are inspired to do so from the father of all lies who is Satan (Jn. 8:44).

The founders of all man-made religions can also be described as being *god-makers* because of the “god” or “gods” they have imagined into existence. The “god-makers” determine the doctrines of faith and method of worship that are to be obeyed by those who choose to follow their false teachings. All of their doctrines and methods of worship are subject to change depending upon the events of the day and who the leader of their religion might be at that time. Thus, the Holy Bible says this of all the god-makers, “. . . **they have gone in the way of Cain . . .**” (Jude 8-19). All devotees of man-made religions will be severely judged by the God of the Holy Bible (Gen. 3:14-19; Job 36:10-12; Ps. 1; 50; 53)!

There has NEVER been a man-made religion that enabled its followers to have a personal and saving relationship with their god or gods! These man-made religions are also never able to *assure* their followers that what they do, in the name of their religion, will ever be enough to appease the god or gods they choose to worship and serve. In other words, the followers of all man-made religions can never sing a song like *Blessed Assurance* to any god of the *god-makers*.

The saying that *all religions are alike* is true because according to the holy Scriptures, all of the followers of man-made religions will be thrown into the *lake of fire* where they will be forever tormented for not doing the will of God (1 Sam. 15:22-23; Mt. 7:21; 25:46; Rev. 20:10-15; 21:8). The followers of all man-made religions are unaware that almost all of the doctrines of man-made religions are opposed to the teachings contained in the inspired Word of God - the Holy Bible. The actions of those faithful to man-made religions will usually reveal this truth (Gen. 4:8). Thus, man-made religions are always in conflict with the God of the Holy Bible regardless of what they believe, teach and do. The Scriptures state, “The way of a fool *is* right in his own eyes . . .” (Prov. 12:15).

God gave Adam ONLY one command to obey (Gen. 3:16-17). Afterward, God gave other commands for mankind to obey (Gen. 4:15; 9:1, 4-7). In doing so, God was reaching out so that mankind could once again fellowship with Him (Gen. 5:24; 6:9) and avoid having to be judged by Him (Gen. 6:3, 11-22; 7:5, 9, 23; 11:1-9). Unfortunately, like Adam and Cain, the majority of mankind failed to obey the commands of God. The people of Israel then received hundreds more of specific “commandments” from God, to regulate their lives by (Ex. 12:1-28; 20:1-17, 23-23:33; Lev. 1:1-27:34). These commandments became known as the *Law of God* and led to the birth of the only true religion ever ordained by God which is Judaism. The religion of Judaism ceased to be in the “will” of God after the Lord Jesus Christ *fulfilled* the “Law of God” (Mt. 5:17; 27:50-51; Mk. 15:37-38; Jn. 7:19; 19:30)!

God gave the law to Moses so mankind might know what sin is (Rom. 7:7), knowing this would provoke man to sin even more (Rom. 5:20). This would lead men to despair over their inability to please God by their own efforts. The reason being, “. . . *Cursed is everyone that continueth not in ALL things which are written in the book of the law, to do them. But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God . . .*” (Gal. 3:10-11). [Caps added for emphasis.] The law of God was indisputable proof that it would only be by the *grace* [unmerited favor] of God that a man or a woman could fellowship with God, be forgiven of all of their sins, and be justified to stand in His Holy presence. Thus, “. . . *Salvation is of the LORD*” (Jon. 2:9), and “. . . a man is justified by faith apart from the deeds of the law” (Rom. 3:28), since “**Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law . . .**” (Gal. 3:13). The Word of God, the Holy Bible, repeatedly reassures us of this truth (Rom. 4:5; 5:8-9; Eph. 2:8-9; 1 Tim. 1:15)!

The “Law” of God” demanded of the Israelites that they love not only God, but the brethren of Israel and all gentiles (Lev. 19:18; Dt. 6:5; Lk. 10:26-27). The new commandment that was given to the members of the “Church” by the Lord Jesus Christ, was to love God

(Mt. 22:37-38; Mk. 12:29-30) and love each other (Jn. 13:34-35; 15:12, 17; 1 Jn. 2:8-11; 4:7, 11, 21; 2 Jn. 4-6) and to love all others (Mt. 5:44; 19:19; 22:39-40; Mk. 12:31; Lk. 6:27-38; Rom.5:5; 13:8-10; 1 Cor. 13).

There are three methods of biblical interpretation: **1. Allegorical 2. Spiritual 3. Literal**

*The Allegorical School of Interpretation* says that beneath the obvious is the real meaning of the passage. The problem with this viewpoint is that everyone can interpret what they read anyway they like. This system of interpretation has no definite standard. All opinions have equal value. The end result of this system of interpretation is total confusion! Example: What if everyone read their daily newspaper, using the *Allegorical Method of Interpretation*? Conclusion: The daily newspaper reports would be of no value since everyone who read them could determine that they meant whatever they thought or wanted them to mean.

There were three schools of teaching which used the allegorical method of interpretation:

**1. Greek Allegorizer** --- The Greeks began this process, so as to be able to combine their religions and philosophies.

**2. Hebrew Allegorizer** --- This was also a combination of religion and philosophy. Only this was comprised of the Mosaic Law and the Prophets with Greek philosophies.

**3. Christian and Patristic Allegorizer** --- Some early Christian leaders, such as Origen, wanted to show that the Scriptures could be harmonious with philosophy. They also took the position that since the Holy Bible was a spiritual book, it required spiritual insight and application. Augustine was also an allegorist, as was Jerome, the translator of the Roman Catholic Bible known as *The Vulgate*.

Many professing Christians tend to *Spiritualize* certain passages in the holy Scriptures as they attempt to understand what they have read. They do this to support a **preconceived** position concerning the subject or topic being discussed. The problem those who use the *spiritual method of interpretation* with the Scriptures have is that they use no traditional or Biblical references to support their interpretation or understanding. They do not allow Scripture to interpret itself. This means that what they say and teach can only be verified by someone who agrees with their particular teachings without using any Scripture to do so. *The Parable of the Ten Virgins* is an excellent example of this fact. Many have taught that the virgins represent saved and unsaved Jews. They ignore the fact that Israel and her people have **never** been symbolically identified in the Scriptures as being *virgins*. Israel is described as the unfaithful and adulterous wife of Jehovah (Isa. 54:5; Jer. 3:20; Hos. 2:2, 7, 16). Thus, there is no way for Israel or any Jew to identify themselves, Scripturally or symbolically, with this parable upon hearing it.

A parable is a story told to illustrate and bring understanding of truth! By using stories of familiar things in the natural or material world, the Lord Jesus was able to teach important spiritual truths. Therefore, it is only the assembly of believers in the Lord Jesus being their personal Savior that is referred to in other passages of Scripture as *the Church* (Rom. 16:5) or *the*

*Body* (Rom. 12:5; Eph. 1:22-23) or *the Bride of Christ* (Rev. 19:7-9) that is described as a virgin who is espoused to the Lord Jesus [the Bridegroom] (2 Cor. 11:2). Thus, this parable can only be about them. Those who insist on spiritualizing what they read in the Scriptures can only come to false and confusing conclusions!

*The Literal School of Interpretation* says that we accept the literal rendering of a sentence unless there is something in the sentence that indicates otherwise. The founder of the literal movement in the *Old Testament* times is Ezra. The literal movement began with the Israelites as described in the eighth chapter of the *Book of Nehemiah*. The religious leaders of the Jews during the times of the Lord Jesus were literalists. However, they had become extremists in their interpretation of the Holy Scriptures. There are several other literal schools of interpretation with their own particular variations with two of these being the *Syrian School of Antioch* and the *Devotional School*.

It was during the time of the Reformation Period that the *General Protestant Method of Interpretation* of the Holy Scriptures became prevalent. This method of interpretation takes into consideration whether the word or passage is PLAIN LITERAL or FIGURATIVE LITERAL, with the context determining the best way to understand what has been read. As an example, if I said that I was so hungry that I could eat a horse, you would understand that I was speaking *figuratively*. In other words, you knew by the illustration that I was really hungry, but there was no way that I could literally eat a horse. If someone told you that it was raining cats and dogs outside you would understand that there was a very heavy thunderstorm taking place in a *figurative literal way*. Using figurative language in the course of a conversation is much more common than not.

**The four reasons for using and defending the Literal Method of Interpretation:**

1. It is the usual method of literary interpretation.
2. All figures of speech depend upon a literal meaning for their interpretation.
3. Most of the Holy Bible is understood when interpreted this way.
4. The Literal Method of Interpretation is a check on the imagination or feelings for each individual.

**The five principles involved in the Literal Method of Interpretation:**

1. The Law of Context - A passage cannot be separated from those surrounding it.
2. The Law of Comparisons - Scripture must be compared with Scripture.
3. The Law of Preference - A clear passage is preferred over the difficult passage.
4. Spelling, grammar and figure of speech must be paid attention in each passage.
5. God revealed Himself to man by means of man's ways and culture.

**There are five literary forms used in the Holy Scriptures.** It is necessary to approach each of these forms in a different manner. They are: **1.** Apocalyptic **2.** Discourse **3.** Parable **4.** Poetry **5.** Prose Narrative

The preceding information is given to explain how and why it is possible for people to disagree over the meaning of the same reading material. Thus, making clear why the *Literal Method of Interpretation* is the only logical way to read any literature. *Biblical Hermeneutics* by Milton S. Terry and *Protestant Biblical Interpretation* by Bernard Ramm are recommended to those interested in studying the subject of hermeneutics further.

Upon learning of the various forms of biblical interpretation I could not understand how those who professed to read and study the Holy Bible using the *Literal Method of Interpretation*, were unable to agree as to when the Rapture [snatching up] of the Church (Jn. 14:1-3; 2 Th. 2:1-2) would take place. This confusion on their part was what caused the research that has led to this treatise. The three most popular Rapture beliefs are named and described as follows:

**1. Pre-trib' Rapture:** Why do some Christians believe that the Rapture [snatching out] of the 'Church' would take place BEFORE the seven years [2,520 days] of tribulation began? These are the years that precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth after which He would rule over the earth for 1,000 years from the city of Jerusalem.

**2. Mid-trib' Rapture:** Why do some Christians believe that the Rapture of the Church would take place MIDWAY through the seven years of tribulation [2,520 days] that precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ to earth?

**3. Post-trib' Rapture:** Why do some Christians believe that the Rapture would take place AFTER the seven years [2,520 days] of tribulation that precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ (Ps. 2:1-12; Jer. 30:7; Dan. 8:23-25; 9:26-27; 12:1; Zech. 12:1-14:9; Mt. 24:15, 21, 29-30; Mk. 13:19-20, 24-26; 2 Th. 2:4; Rev. 3:10; 6:1-20:6)?

My research and studies revealed that each of these teachings and beliefs were based upon how their proponents chose to interpret what has become known as the *Olivet Discourse of Christ*. Portions of this question-and-answer session between the Lord Jesus Christ and four of His disciples are recorded in Matthew 24:3-26:2 and Mark 13:3-37 and Luke 21:7-36.

I also learned that some well known Christian theologians and pastors who usually teach and preach using the *Literal Method of Interpretation* and take the position that Scripture must interpret Scripture whenever possible, didn't actually do so when it came to certain passages in the *Olivet Discourse*. These people actually *spiritualized* parts of the Olivet Discourse to support their **preconceived position** that the Lord Jesus NEVER ever taught about the Rapture and never even alluded to its teaching (Mk. 13:23). This is why **I have concluded that this preconceived viewpoint is the main reason why the Rapture is the least understood and least appreciated and most incorrectly taught of all of the major doctrines recorded in the Holy Scriptures.**

I then wondered if it were possible to piece the *Olivet Discourse* together from the three gospels in which *portions* of it are recorded? In other words, was it possible to read this question and answer session exactly as it took place with EVERY recorded word in the Holy Bible between the Lord Jesus and his disciples in their correct sequence? Like a courtroom transcript!

In my research I learned that a composite of the *Olivet Discourse of Christ* where every word is accounted for in its proper sequence had never been done. I surmised that the reason for this were the false beliefs and teachings that only two or possibly three questions were asked of the Lord Jesus regarding future events. It wasn't until I acknowledged that Peter, James, John, and Andrew had actually asked FIVE questions of the Lord Jesus that I found it possible to assemble a composite of this entire conversation between them exactly as it took place with every recorded word accounted for. The other necessary discovery that had to be made, in order to piece together the *Olivet Discourse of Christ* was that Luke DID NOT write all of his portions of this conversation in the chronological sequence in which the Lord Jesus gave it. Specifically, Luke wrote his portion of the answer given by the Lord Jesus to their third question (Lk. 21:8-11) BEFORE he wrote his portion of the answer given by the Lord Jesus to the second question asked of Him that was also written in a **reverse** order (Lk. 21:20-24, 12-19). This would be the **first of three times** where Luke, under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit (2 Sam. 23:1-2; 2 Chr. 36:12 ; Isa. 40:5,8; 59:21; Jer. 1:9; Mk. 12:36; 2 Tim. 3:16; 2 Pet. 1:21; 3:15-16; Rev. 22:18-19), did not see fit to record an event in the chronological order from how it took place!

The second time when Luke did not write about an event chronologically had to do with what is now known as the Lord's Supper [Communion] (1 Cor. 10:16-17; 11:23-26; Heb. 10:4, 10-18). Matthew, Mark, and John, record in their gospels that the Lord Jesus spoke of His being betrayed BEFORE what is now known as holy communion was given to His disciples (Mt. 26:20-21; Mk. 14:17-21; Jn. 13:1-21). They also recorded that the Lord Jesus then identified Judas Iscariot as being the one who would betray Him BEFORE the taking of the cup of wine and the breaking of bread with His other eleven disciples (Mt. 26:22-29; Mk. 14:22-25; Jn. 13:22-26). Luke, however, recorded that the Lord Jesus told of His betrayal AFTER His disciples had participated in the Lord's Supper (Lk. 22:19-23). Since Judas Iscariot could not take part in the Lord's Supper, once Satan came into him (Jn. 13:26-27; 1 Cor. 10:20-21), Luke's account cannot be chronologically correct. Upon receiving the sop, Judas Iscariot immediately left the Upper Room to complete his infamous act of betrayal (Jn. 13:27-31). Matthew, Mark, and John wrote what was said and done during this event in a chronological sequence. Luke did not!

The third passage where Luke did not place his description of an event in the chronological order in which it took place is recorded in Luke 23:44-46. To the casual reader, Luke would give the impression that the veil in the Temple that separated the *Holy of Holies* from the *Holy Place*, was torn BEFORE the Lord Jesus had given up His spirit while on the cross at Calvary. Matthew and Mark, on the other hand, record that the veil was torn AFTER the Lord Jesus had given up His spirit (Mt. 27:50-51; Mk.15:37-38). The spiritual significance of this event was that a human priest was no longer necessary to intercede for mankind. The sin barrier that separated mankind from God had been removed by the sacrifice of the Lord Jesus for ALL sins. This meant that individual men and women were now able to go directly to God in prayer and confession (Gen. 26:31-35; Heb. 9:1-10:22). Thus, the tearing of the veil by God could not have been done until AFTER the Lord Jesus had given up His spirit while on the cross. Matthew and Mark placed this event in its correct chronological sequence, while Luke did not!

To correctly reassemble the question-and-answer session known as the *Olivet Discourse of Christ* EXACTLY as it took place and was said by the Lord Jesus to Peter, James, John, and Andrew, it is necessary to omit the words that He did not say. These are words that were added by Matthew, Mark, and Luke to describe their own personal feelings to their readers or to introduce what the Lord Jesus would say. Therefore, the words that were NOT spoken by the Lord Jesus are not included in my composite of His Olivet Discourse. These omitted words are:

1. 'And Jesus answered and said unto them' (Mt. 24:4a).
2. (whosoever readeth, let him understand) (Mt. 24:15b).
3. 'And Jesus, answering them, began to say,' (Mk. 13:5a).
4. (let him that readeth understand) (Mk. 13:14e).
5. 'And he said,' (Lk. 21:8a).
6. 'Then said he unto them,' (Lk. 21:10a).
7. 'And he spoke to them a parable:' (Lk. 21:29a).
8. 'And it came to pass that, when Jesus had finished all these sayings, he said unto his disciples,' (Mt. 26:1).

It is important to note that the *Olivet Discourse of Christ* clearly reveals the "Pre-trib Rapture" to be the correct teaching and not the "Mid-trib" or "Post-trib" teachings that are believed by so many. It is also important to acknowledge that the prophetic significance of the third and final harvest feast of the year on the Jewish calendar that is known as **Trumpets** will be fulfilled by the Lord Jesus with the Rapture [snatching out] of His Church/Body/Bride (Ex. 23:16; 34:22; Lev. 23:23-25; Num. 29:1-6; Jn. 4:35-38; 2 Th. 2:1).

I say again that those who are looking forward to the *Second Coming* [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth are unaware that the assembly of believers called His *bride* (2 Cor. 11:2; Rev. 19:7-9), His *body* (Rom. 12:5; 1 Cor. 12:12-14; Eph. 1:22-23), and His *Church* (Acts 2:47; 20:28) were ONLY to look forward to His return that is now called the Rapture (Lk. 12:35-48; 21:28, 34-35; Jn. 14:1-3; 1 Cor. 15:51-54; 1 Th. 4:13-18; 5:2; 2 Th. 2:1; Ti. 2:13; 1 Jn. 2:28; 3:2-3; Rev. 3:3, 10-11; 22:12-13, 20). Thus, the Church was NEVER to look forward to the *Second Coming* [2nd Advent] to planet Earth by the Lord Jesus. The reason why is that the seven years prior to that blessed event will be the worst in the history of planet Earth (Mt.24:15-21; Rev. 6:1-19:21). These described judgments are specifically for a Christ rejecting world in general and a Christ rejecting Israel in particular!

The composite of the aforementioned Olivet Discourse is included as part of the week that is known as the *Passion of the Christ* in the chapter entitled "A Biblical View of the Past." Those who become believers in the Lord Jesus and trust Him as their personal Savior **after** the Rapture will be the people who will anticipate His Second Coming [2nd Advent] to planet Earth!

The concept of time, as we know it, began with God and was implemented by Him when he first created the angelic beings and the heavens and the earth (Gen. 1:1; Isa. 14:12-14; Ezek. 28:12-15). Time, as we now know it, will cease with the conclusion of the "Great White Throne

Judgment” of all those who died in their sins due to trusting in their own good works, life and personal religion for their salvation in whichever of the five ages they lived (Isa. 65:17; 66:22; 2 Pet. 3:10-13; Rev. 20:11-21:5; 22:5). A type or form of works is always a basic tenet of man-made religions that oppose the holy Scriptures and the will of God!

An *Age* [dispensation] is a definite period of time in which the people living are tested by God regarding their obedience to some specific revelation of His will! In other words, an *Age* is a distinguishable period of time in the outworking of God’s purpose (Mt. 24:3). The purpose of each *Age* is to place mankind under a specific rule of conduct for that particular period of time even though salvation has been and will always be by God’s grace, through faith alone. These periods of time are also known as *dispensations* or *economies*. The English word “age” is from the Greek noun *aion*, which has various connotations, e.g. *a period of time, an age; perpetuity of time, eternity, forever*.

There are five *Ages* [dispensations] described in the holy Scriptures with each having a definite beginning and ending in which every human being is wholly and naturally responsible to God for what they think, say and do! (The fundamental thought, for the number five when used in Scripture, according to *The Numerical Bible* by F.W. Grant, is *Whole responsibility under God*.) The title of each *Age* conforms to man’s state of existence during that particular time period. The biblical account of the five *Ages* as to when they began and ended and the duration of each are as follows:

**1. The Age of Innocence** began with the creation of Adam (Gen. 2:7) and ended when he ate the forbidden fruit (Gen. 3:7). Its duration was probably 40 years and 40 days.

**2. The Age of Beginnings** began immediately after Adam ate the forbidden fruit (Gen. 3:7) and ended when the Israelites agreed to keep the *Mosaic Covenant* [the Law] while in the wilderness (Ex. 19:5-8; 20:1-26; 21:1-31:18; Dt. 5:27-28). Its duration was about 2,500 years.

**3. The Age of Law** began when the Israelites agreed to keep the *Mosaic Covenant* [the Law] (Ex.19:5-8; 20:1-26; 21:1-31:18; Dt. 5:27-28) and ended when the Lord Jesus Christ **fulfilled** the Law and then gave up His spirit while on the cross at Calvary (Mt. 5:17; Jn. 19:30; Heb. 9:11-28). Its duration was about 1,500 years.

**4. The Age of Grace** began when the Lord Jesus fulfilled the *Mosaic Covenant* [the Law] and then gave up His spirit, while on the cross at Calvary (Mt. 5:17; Jn. 19:30; Heb. 9:11-28). It will end with His Second Coming [2nd Advent] to planet Earth (Mt. 25:31-46; Rev. 19:11-21). The time of its duration appears to be 1,998 years.

**5. The Age of Messiah’s Kingdom** will begin with the Second Coming [2nd Advent ] of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth (Mt. 25:31-46; Rev. 19:11-21) and will end with the release of Satan from the abyss (Rev. 20:1-3, 7-9). Its duration will be for 1,000 years!

The doctrines of “election” and “free will” are clearly taught in the holy Scriptures! These doctrines appear to be incompatible but in reality they complement each other as is clearly illustrated in the three stages of a Jewish marriage. The name of every human being is placed in the *Lamb’s Book of Life* upon conception in their mother’s womb (Dan. 12:1; Phil. 4:3; Rev. 3:5; 21:27). Thus, every human being has been *elected* by God, the Father, to be saved throughout eternity. This confirms that God is not willing that any should perish (2 Pet. 3:9). In our current “age of Grace” every man and woman, upon reaching the age of accountability, MUST trust, solely by faith alone, in the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ for their *personal* salvation to keep their name in the *Lamb’s Book of Life*.

There were **three stages** involved in consummating the marriage of a Jewish couple during the time of the *1st Advent* of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth. Most Christians in our day and age are not aware that these three stages will be “replicated” by the bride of Christ [Church] and her bridegroom [the Lord Jesus]!

These three stages of a Jewish marriage began with the patriarch of the Hebrew people, whose name was Abraham. The first stage was called the *engagement* and began when Abraham [a type of God, the Father] sent his servant [a type of God, the Holy Spirit] to choose a bride for his son Issac [a type of the Lord Jesus Christ]. It was the father of the bridegroom who would choose a bride for his son with a proposal of marriage to her (Gen. 24:1-67; 38:6; Mt. 22:2; Eph. 1:4). **This is known as election.** The chosen woman then had the option of either rejecting or receiving the marriage proposal. This is known as having a *free will*. If the proposal was rejected, then the father of the bridegroom would do the same with another woman until the proposal of marriage was accepted by a willing woman. Upon her acceptance of the marriage proposal, the father of the bridegroom would then pay for her (Gen. 34:6-12; Ruth 4:10; 1 Sam. 18:22-27; 1 Cor. 6:19-20; 1 Pet. 1:18-19) and the couple were now engaged.

However, just as a woman had the *option* of refusing a marriage proposal under the Jewish tradition, that same option is available to all of those whom God, the Father, has elected to be a member of the bride for His Son (Eph. 1:4-5, 11-14). Those who choose to reject the offer of salvation that is freely given by God, through the sacrifice of the Lord Jesus for the sins of all who would *believe* in Him, will have their “name” blotted out of the *Lamb’s Book of Life* (Ex. 32:32-33; Ps. 69:28; Rev. 13:1-8; 20:11-15). In contrast, those who do trust the Lord Jesus as their personal Savior will have all of their “sins” blotted out (Acts 3:19). Thus, their name will remain in the *Lamb’s Book of Life* forever. The doctrines of God’s election and the *free will* of mankind are clearly revealed in the Jewish transaction of marriage! The bride of the Lord Jesus Christ has been paid for by the blood He shed for her while on His cross at Calvary (Mk. 14:24; Lk. 22:20; Acts 20:28; Rom. 5:9; Eph. 1:7; Col. 1:14; Heb. 9:22; 1 Pet. 1:18-19).

**The second stage was called the *espousal*** (Dt. 20:7; 22:23-27; 24:5; 2 Sam. 3:14; Song 3:11; Jer. 2:2; Mt. 1:18-25; Lk. 1:26-56; 2:4-7; 2 Cor. 11:2). It began when the couple was *legally* united as husband and wife. They then were to live apart without seeing or knowing each other

sexually for a minimum of 360 days [one year] to a maximum of 720 days [two years]. One year in the *Holy Bible* consists of 360 days (Gen. 7:11, 24; 24:8:3-4). The specified one-year minimum was to confirm that the bride was not pregnant and the two-year maximum was to avoid procrastination on the part of the bridegroom. During this time, the bridegroom would build a dwelling to take his bride to live. This dwelling was usually an add-on that was attached to his father's house. When the father of the bridegroom deemed this add-on dwelling to be ready to live in, he would then send his son for the *home-taking* of his bride (Jn. 14:1-3). It should be noted that the bridegroom NEVER knew when this day would be since it would not be his decision to make but his father's (Mt. 1:18-25; 24:36; Mk. 13:32; Lk. 1:26-35; 2:1-5; Jn. 14:1-3).

The bride who loved her new husband would begin counting each day following her marriage to him. She knew her husband could not return for her until a minimum of 360 days had passed, but he could do so any day afterward. The closer she came to the 720th day [end of the second year], the more assured she could be in knowing the day of his arrival for her. Her love for her husband strengthened her resolution that he would not find her sleeping or to be unaware of his return for her. In contrast, the bride who did not love or care for her husband could not be bothered or be concerned over when he would return for her. This lack of love on her part was expressed by her failing to count the days that followed her *espousal* [marriage] to him. This indifferent attitude on her part revealed that she was not concerned whether he found her sleeping or not (1 Th. 4:13-5:11).

This *second stage* is to be replicated with the bride of the Lord Jesus Christ. The moment an individual "trusts" [believes], by faith alone in the Lord Jesus to be their personal Savior they become part of His bride and are legally bound to Him (2 Cor. 11:2). This stage will end either with their physical death when they will find themselves immediately in His presence in Heaven (2 Cor. 5:1-8; Phil. 1:21, 23; 1 Th. 4:13-14, 18) or with the event we call the Rapture when the *Bride/Body/Church* of Christ is snatched out of the earth by Him, like a *bridegroom* or a *thief* in the night would do (Mt. 24:37-44; 25:1-13; Mk. 13:33-37; Lk. 12:35-48, 56; 13:25; 17:26-30, 34-36; 18:8; 21:34-36; Jn. 14:1-3; 1 Cor. 15:51-55; 2 Cor. 11:2; 1 Th. 1:10; 4:13-18; 5:2-6; 2 Th. 2:1-3, 6-7; 2 Tim. 4:8; Ti. 2:13; 2 Pet. 3:3-4; 1 Jn. 2:28; 3:2-3; Jude 18; Rev. 3:10-11; 22:20). The people who are not taken in the Rapture were either non-believers or *professing* Christians who were engaged in a form of religion, even though they might not have been aware of that fact (Mt. 7:21-23; 18:3; 25:11-12; Lk. 13:25-27; Jn. 3:5-8).

The third stage in consummating a Jewish marriage was called the *marriage feast or supper* and could be for as long as seven days (Jud. 14:12; Jn. 2:1-10; Rev. 19:9). This stage began with a cry that the bridegroom was returning for his bride (Song 3:6-11; Mt. 25:6). This is when the bridegroom would learn whether or not his wife had been watching for him. He would then take his wife to her new home where their marriage feast was prepared (Jn. 2:1-10) with their guests and where their marriage was sexually consummated. The celebration of their "marriage feast" [supper] could be for as long as seven days (Jud. 14:1-3, 10, 12, 17; Jn. 2:1-10;

Rev. 19:9). Unlike weddings in our present day, the bridegroom was always the primary participant in a Jewish wedding and not the bride!

The third and final stage for the Church is to be the same as it was for a Jewish wedding. It begins with a cry that the bridegroom is returning for his bride (1 Th. 4:16), followed by the sudden snatching out [Rapture] of His bride [Church] by the Lord Jesus Christ (1 Cor. 15:51-53; 1 Th. 5:2). The Rapture will fulfill the promise the Lord Jesus made to His disciples, prior to His being crucified, that He would come **for** His own and take them to Heaven (Jn. 14:1-3). At His Second Coming [2nd Advent] to planet Earth, the Lord Jesus will return **with** His saints (Zech. 12:8-10; 13:1-14:9; Rev. 19:11-14) and angels (Mt. 25:31).

After the Rapture, the first thing the bride of the Lord Jesus will do in Heaven is stand at the *judgment seat of Christ* (2 Cor. 5:10). This is NOT a judgment for sin in the life of the believer [Christian] while on earth (Jn. 3:16; Heb. 10:12, 14, 17). It is a judgment concerning the things or “works” each did or did not do *after* they became a Christian [believer] (Mt. 12:36; Rom. 14:10-12; Gal. 6:7; Eph. 6:8; Col. 3:23-25). The rewards received by each individual will be determined at this time (1 Cor. 3:8, 11-15; 2 Tim. 4:7-8; Rev. 2:10; 22:12). The **judgement seat of Christ** confirms the fact that **salvation is a gift and rewards must be earned**. In contrast, all man-made religions teach that salvation must be earned and rewards are a gift from their god. After the judgment seat of Christ has been completed is when the marriage supper of the “Lamb” [the Lord Jesus] and His bride [the Church] will be celebrated (Rev. 19:7-9).

All of the sins that would ever be committed by sinful men and women, whether in the distant past, present, or future, were placed upon the Lord Jesus Christ while He carried His cross to Mount Calvary as the *scapegoat* for mankind (Lev. 16:7-10, 20-22, 26; 2 Cor. 5:21). The Lord Jesus paid the price in full for all of the sins of mankind when He, *God, the Son*, was “separated” from being in the presence of the other two members of the triune Godhead who are *God, the Father* and *God, the Holy Spirit* (Acts 17:29; Rom. 1:19-20; Col. 2:9) for three hours while on His cross (Mt. 27:33-50; Mk. 15:22-37; Lk. 23:33-46; Jn. 19:16-30). The anguish suffered by the Lord Jesus during those three hours of *separation* [death] is impossible for any man or angel to fully comprehend or to appreciate! All who reject His *atonement* sacrifice on their behalf will spend *eternity* alone, in total darkness and absolute silence (Jude 12-13) while remembering all of their thoughts and the things they did or did not do while living their life on earth. They will suffer a never-ending nightmare with no hope of ever escaping from their miserable situation after the *Great White Throne Judgment* (Rev. 20:11-15).

All of the *spiritual gifts* (Rom. 12:3-8; 1 Cor. 12:4-11, 28; Eph. 4:7-12) that are given by God to each Christian *after* coming to belief in the Lord Jesus are to be used by them in “love” (1 Cor. 13:1-2). Thus, **love** is superior to faith and hope (1 Cor. 13:4-7, 13). The three “sign gifts” of *languages* [tongues] (Acts 2:4-11; 10:44-46), and *healing* the sick (Acts 3:1-11; 9:32-35; 14:8-10; 19:11-12; 28:7-10), and *raising* the dead (Acts 9:36-42; 20:7-12) were to be used by members of (1 Cor. 14:22a) the early church among “unbelievers” to *authenticate* the message of

the good news regarding the Lord Jesus Christ (1 Cor. 15:1-4). The assembling of the *New Testament* (1 Cor. 13:9-10) in subsequent years gradually caused the sign gifts to fade out (1 Cor. 13: 8; 1 Tim. 5:23).

However, *prophecy* was always considered the greatest “spiritual gift” in the early apostolic assembly of believers in the Lord Jesus Christ (1 Cor. 14:1, 5). The gift of prophecy was to be used primarily among *believers* [Christians] to edify, encourage, and comfort them (1 Cor. 14:3, 6, 22b, 31; 2 Cor. 1:3-6; 1 Th. 4:13-18). The religious leaders of the Jewish people were reprimanded by the Lord Jesus Christ for not knowing of the time of His first visitation by way of the “signs of the times” (Mt. 16:1-3) as was all of Israel (Mt. 23:37-39; Lk. 13:34-35; 19:42). Thus, it is safe to say that He will expect the same from all of those who are alive on the earth at the time of the *Rapture* and at His Second Coming [2nd Advent] (Lk. 17:22).

**The belief and teachings that no one may know the day of the Rapture or the day of the Second Coming [2nd Advent] have to be false**, because the Lord Jesus declared that he had foretold ALL things and that ALL would be revealed and that ALL would be known: **1.** “. . . for there is nothing covered that shall not be revealed; and hidden, that shall not be known” (Mt. 10:26). **2.** “For there is nothing hidden, which shall not be manifested; neither was any thing kept secret, but that it should come [to light]” (Mk. 4:22). **3.** “But take heed; behold, I have foretold you all things” (Mk. 13:23). **4.** “For nothing is secret, that shall not be made manifest; neither *any thing* hidden, that shall not be known and come [to light]” (Lk. 8:17). **5.** “For there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; neither hidden, that shall not be known” (Lk. 12:2). **6.** “. . . I spoke openly to the world; I ever taught in the synagogue, and in the temple, where the Jews always resort; and in secret have I said nothing” (Jn. 18:20).

How could **ALL** be foretold, revealed, and known, if no one may know the day of the Rapture or the day of the Second Coming [2nd Advent] to earth by the Lord Jesus Christ? The conflict between these teachings should be obvious to everyone, especially learned *theologians*.

The first man to never die physically was Enoch, who lived for 365 years before being “snatched out” [Rapture] of the earth by God (Gen. 5:22-24; Heb. 11:5-6.) The second man who never physically died by being “snatched out” was the prophet Elijah (2 Ki. 2:1-11). Elijah and his successor, Elisha, along with the sons of the prophets in the cities of Bethel and Jericho all knew the day when Elijah would be taken away [snatched out]. Thus, at least fifty-two men knew the day of the Rapture of Elijah. The same will be true prior to the *snatching out* of all those who are members of the group of believers known, in the Holy Bible, as the *church* or the *body* or the *bride* of the Lord Jesus Christ. This truth is illustrated by way of the *Parable of the Ten Virgins* (Mt. 25:1-13), which describes two groups of people who are unaware of the soon return of the bridegroom [the Lord Jesus] for his bride [the Church] (2 Cor. 11:1-2). Some event will cause them not only to awake from their sleep, but get up and go out to meet Him. Thus, no one will be quoting Matthew 24:36 or Mark 13:32 just prior to the Rapture. The Scriptures repeatedly confirm that God has *never* played the game of “gotcha” with mankind (Dan. 10:14)

# A Biblical View of the Past

The *fulfillment* of Bible prophecy is indisputable and irrefutable proof that the men who wrote the Holy Scriptures were inspired by *God, the Holy Spirit* (2 Pet. 1:19-21). Thus, the *Holy Bible* is the “Word of God” and the only source of absolute truth to be found on planet Earth! There is no other holy book, of any man-made religion, that has ever dared to tell of future events, places to be, or people not yet born as is recorded in the holy Scriptures. Few seem aware or apply much importance to the fact that approximately one-third of the contents of the Holy Bible was prophetic when written.

Bible prophecy is validated by the testimony of the Lord Jesus Christ Himself. This is why the Scriptures declare, “. . . the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy” (Rev. 19:10b). In other words, the entire testimony of the Lord Jesus Christ, as to who He is, what He did, and when He will return, is dependent upon Bible prophecy. Thus, it can be said that the Lord Jesus Christ is the cornerstone of the Church and Bible prophecy is the ground which that cornerstone rests upon (Ps. 118:22; Isa. 28:16; Eph. 2:19-22; 1 Pet. 2:6). This is why the early Church took the subject of Bible prophecy both literally and seriously (Acts 17:10-12).

A number of Scriptures were to be used to prove the identity of the promised Messiah [the anointed One] when He came to earth the first time [1st Advent] (Gen. 3:15; Ps. 132:11; Isa. 7:14; 9:6; 53; Jer. 23:5; Dan. 9:25-26; Mic. 5:2; Mt. 1:18-2:11; Lk. 2:5-7; Jn. 1:1, 14; 12:46; Heb. 2:16; 1 Pet. 2:21-25). There were many who came to trust *Jesus of Nazareth* as being the promised Messiah because of the fulfilled prophecies concerning Him that were contained in the *Old Testament* (Lk. 24: 44-47; Acts 17:10-12).

A search through the Scriptures affirms that God has always told in advance WHAT He was going to do, WHY He was going to do so, and WHEN He would. Thus, God is a *date-setter* who has never played “gotcha” with mankind (Isa. 42:8-9; 44:7-8; 45:18-21; 46:9-10; 48:3-6, 16; Mt. 10:26; Mk. 4:22; Lk. 8:17; 12:2). God began this pattern of revelation with Adam in the Garden of Eden and continued to do so with mankind through the ages (Amos 3:7), as the book of *Revelation* attests (Rev. 22:18-19).

Another established pattern of God is to give a WARNING of His coming judgment for sin, then to give a SIGN to authenticate His warning, followed by His righteous JUDGMENT. Thus, those who choose to disregard the warnings of God and the signs He gives to authenticate those warnings are responsible for the subsequent judgment that befalls them!

Bible prophecy is simply *prerecorded history* authored by God (2 Tim. 3:16; 2 Pet. 1:20-21; 3:15-16). Those wishing to confirm whether Bible prophecy is accurate or not need only to investigate the circumstances of the birth of the Lord Jesus Christ since His testimony is based upon Bible prophecy (Isa. 7:14; 9:6; 53; Mic. 5:2; Jn. 5:46-47; Rev. 19:10). His fulfillment of

Bible prophecy was necessary so the Jewish people could correctly identify their promised Messiah! It is important to note that the *Gregorian* calendar, which came into use in 1582 A.D. is *four years short* of the actual birth year of the Lord Jesus Christ. Also, 'B.C.' means *Before Christ* and 'A.D.' is from the Latin words, 'Anno Domini', meaning, *In the year of our Lord*.

A three-year period of fulfilled prophecy that included events of tremendous importance and significance began with an old man named Zacharias who was of the priestly order of Abijah (1 Chr. 24:10; Neh. 12:4; Lk. 1:5). By the choosing of lots, it fell to him to burn incense (Num. 16:40; 2 Chr. 26:18) in the Temple during the *Feast of Trumpets* in September of the year 5 B.C. (Lk. 1:8). It was while fulfilling his duties that Zacharias was told by an angel of God that he and his wife, Elizabeth, who was of the lineage of Aaron (Lk. 1:5), were going to have a son.

As an elderly man, who was married to an old childless woman who had already gone through menopause, Zacharias, understandably, expressed disbelief upon hearing this news (Lk. 1:5-25, 36-64, 67-80). The penalty for doubting this message from God was the inability of Zacharias to speak until the birth of his son, who would be known by future generations as *John, the Baptist*. His wife Elizabeth became pregnant in September of the year 5 B.C. (Lk. 1:24) and their son John was born on the day of the year with the most hours of sunlight, which would be June 21, 4 B.C. According to the message from God, John was to be a *Nazarite* [one separated] throughout his life (Num. 6:1-21; Lk. 1:15).

The public ministry of John began on his 30th birthday which was June 21, 27 A.D. and was for a period of six months, when it ended with him identifying the Messiah on December 21, 27 A.D. John's ministry consisted of **three** parts. The first part was to *announce* the coming of their promised Messiah to the Jewish people (Mal. 3:1a; Mt. 3:1-2). The second part was to *prepare* the Jewish people for the coming of their promised Messiah (Isa. 40:3; Mt. 3:3-12; Mk. 1:1-8; Lk. 3:1-18; Jn. 1:14-28). The final phase of John's ministry was to *identify* their promised Messiah to the Jewish people (Mt. 3:13-17; Mk. 1:9-11; Lk. 3:21-23; Jn. 1:29-41; 3:22-30).

It is vital to know that the English word *baptize* was a new word created by the English translators of the *New Testament* from the Greek word *baptizo*. In other words, the Greek word *baptizo*, was NEVER translated into English but "transliterated" because this Greek word had as many as twenty different meanings, depending upon how it was used and its context. **When used by the writers of the *New Testament*, the meaning of *baptizo* is best understood to mean "identify" or "identified with."**

John was engaged in a Jewish water purification rite with his Jewish brothers and sisters (Num. 8:5-22; 31:23; Mt. 3:5-6; Jn. 1:26, 31b; 2:6; 11:55; Acts 21:26; Jas. 4:8; 1 Pet. 1:22) when he baptized [identified] Y'shua of Nazareth as the promised Messiah of the *Old Testament*. Though the Lord Jesus was pure throughout His being, He *identified* Himself with His "chosen people." The goal of this rite in water was one of holiness and a pure spiritual life (1 Chr. 24:28).

On the day that John identified the Lord Jesus as being the promised Messiah [the anointed One] of the Old Testament, *God, the Father* also identified the Lord Jesus as His beloved Son (Mt. 3:16-17) and the Lord Jesus identified Himself with all of mankind! Thus, John the *Identifier* should be the clear and simple title for this man, chosen by God, to identify the Messiah of Israel to his chosen people who are the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. It should be noted that though John did no miracles during his lifetime (Jn. 10:41), he was declared the greatest of all the prophets by the Lord Jesus Christ, because he came in the power of the *Old Testament* prophet, Elijah (Mt. 11:11-14; 17:10-13; Mk. 9:11-13; Lk. 7:26-28). The life of John the *Identifier* ended when he was beheaded by King Herod Antipas at the request of Herodias, the adulteress wife of his brother (Mt. 14:1-11; Mk. 6:14-28).

It was six months after Elizabeth became pregnant when her cousin, a young virgin woman named Mary, was impregnated by God, the Holy Spirit, during the *Feast of the Passover* in 4 B.C. (Lk. 1:24-38). In this way God, the Son could be born as the *Son of God* without sin or of having a sinful nature (Jn. 1, 14; 8:58; 10:33; 20:28; 2 Cor. 5:21; Phil. 2:5-8; Col. 1:16-17; 1 Tim. 3:16; Ti. 2:13; 1 Pet. 2:22; 1 Jn. 1:1-2; 3:5) yet be fully human as the one and only *God-man*. The Lord Jesus Christ, was born during the *lambing season* on December 21st, which is the day of the year with the least hours of sunlight, in the year 4 B.C. Thus, the Lord Jesus Christ was “. . . like a root out of a dry ground. . .” (Isa. 53:2) or “. . . *light is come into the world and men loved darkness rather than light because their deeds were evil* “ (Jn. 3:19) or “I am come a light into the world, that whosoever believeth on me should not abide in darkness” (Jn. 12:46).

It is important to understand why the Messiah [the anointed One] could not have a human father if He was to be born sinless or without having a sinful nature and yet be fully human. When Adam ate the forbidden fruit, he deliberately disobeyed the edict of God (Gen. 2:15-17; 3:6, 8-12; Ps. 51:5; 1 Cor. 15:21-22; 1 Tim. 2:14). This caused Adam to acquire a sinful nature that became an intrinsic part of his genetic makeup or DNA and which would then be passed on to all progeny having a human father. Thus, “. . . by one man . . . all have sinned” (Rom. 5:12). Eve, however, did not sin when she ate the forbidden fruit while in the Garden of Eden. Eve ate the forbidden fruit because she had been *deceived* by Satan (Gen. 3:1-6, 13, 15; 2 Cor. 11:3; 1 Tim. 2:14). Thus, the sinful nature of mankind and with which ALL children are born, can only be passed on by men!

Adam probably spent the first forty years of his life alone in the *Garden of Eden*. During that time, he had fellowship with God, the Son (Jn. 1:18; 9:35; 14:9), while caring for the garden and identifying each living creature (Gen. 2:19-20). After which time God created Eve (Gen. 2:18, 21-22). According to F. W. Grant, author of *The Numerical Bible*, the fundamental thought for the number forty is, ‘Full testing according to the whole responsibility.’ Adam passed his test and was rewarded with Eve (Gen. 2:23). Eve probably ate the forbidden fruit on the fortieth day of her creation and by doing so failed her test. It is also possible that Adam ate the fruit for fear of being separated from Eve. If so, Adam chose his relationship with Eve over his relationship with God.

In our current sexually permissive age, it is difficult to fully appreciate the scandal caused by the pregnancy of Mary when in the *espousal* stage of her marriage with Joseph (Mt. 1:18; Lk. 1:27; 2:5). Mary told how she came to be pregnant, but Joseph, like all others, did not believe her. Joseph could have had Mary stoned to death for adultery (Lev. 20:10; Dt. 22:22-24; Jn. 8:1-5). However, because of his love for her, Joseph decided to divorce Mary quietly to lessen her embarrassment and shame. It took an angel of God, by way of a dream to a sleeping Joseph, to convince him that Mary was not guilty of adultery (Mt. 1:18-25; Lk. 1:26-56). Therefore, Joseph did not have Mary stoned to death, nor divorce her, or to even observe the Jewish law of jealousies (Num. 5:11-31). However, Mary's reputation would be tarnished for the remainder of her life from being pregnant while in the espousal stage of her marriage with Joseph. The Pharisees saying they were not born of fornication is proof of this truth (Jn. 8:41).

The prophecies of a son, born of a virgin (Isa. 7:14; 9:6; Mic. 5:2) had to be either ignored or discounted by the Jewish religious leaders and common citizens alike in regard to the pregnancy of Mary and the birth of the Lord Jesus, her first born son (Mt. 1:22-25). **It should be noted that after the birth of the Lord Jesus, Mary made a sacrifice for her own sins, in the manner that all Jewish women were to do after they had a baby (Lk. 2:22-24, 39). The instructions of how Jewish women were to make an offering, for their own sins, after having a baby was given by God to Moses, who recorded them in Leviticus 12:1-8. The fact that this was to be an offering for sin or an atonement by the new mother is stated four different times in this passage. Thus, the belief and teaching that Mary was born sinless and never sinned throughout her life is biblically false. Another false belief and teaching is that Mary remained a virgin throughout her lifetime. The biblical account reveals that Mary and Joseph sexually consummated their union after the birth of the Lord Jesus and together they had four additional sons with an unknown number of daughters (Mt. 12:46-47; 13:53-56; Mk. 3:31-32; 6:1-3; Lk. 8:19-20; Jn. 2:12; 7:5; Acts 1:14; 1 Cor. 9:4-5; Gal. 1:19).** Nothing is recorded or is known about the sisters of the Lord Jesus Christ!

The birth of the Lord Jesus Christ was first told to the people of Israel by way of angels to the shepherds who were in the field because it was the *lambing season*. What the shepherds heard and saw they made known abroad (Lk. 2:1-20). They told of the *Lamb of God* (Jn. 1:29, 36) being born who was their promised Messiah [Anointed One]. On the eighth day after His birth, the Lord Jesus was taken by Joseph and Mary to the holy Temple to be circumcised according to the covenant between God and Abraham (Gen. 17:9-14; Lk. 2:21-24). It was there that an old man named Simeon, who had been promised by *God, the Holy Spirit*, that he would not die until he saw the Lord's Messiah, declared their baby to be the promised *One* for whom he had been waiting (Lk. 2:25-35). After Simeon said this, Anna, a prophetess of about 105 years old, also told them that their baby would bring redemption (Lk. 2:36-38). Simeon and Anna were ignored by the religious leaders and the people of Israel the same as Zacharias, Elizabeth, Mary, Joseph, and the shepherds! About two years later, a large caravan of men known as the *Magi* came from the east and arrived in Jerusalem asking where the *King of the Jews* was to be born so they could go and worship Him (Mt. 2:1-2). The Jewish citizens of Jerusalem and King Herod

the Great, who was an Edomite, became highly agitated upon hearing their inquiry (Mt. 2:3). The answer to their question was that He would be born in the little town of Bethlehem (Mic. 5:2; Mt. 2:4-6).

The visit of the Magi from the east had to have been in the fall or early part of the winter in 2 B.C. There are two reasons for believing this to be true. The first being that Joseph and Mary were found by the Magi to be living in a house in Bethlehem when they arrived to worship the Lord Jesus Christ and to present their gifts to Him (Mt. 2:11). In addition to which, King Herod the Great had determined from what the Magi had told him about the star they had followed and when they began their journey that the baby they were seeking could have been as old as two years of age. The news of a possible rival to his throne and his desire to preserve his position as king caused Herod to have ALL of the boys and girls, two years and younger, in Bethlehem murdered (Mt.2:13-18). Thus, the prophecy of Jeremiah was completely fulfilled (Jer. 31:15).

All of these things, beginning with Zacharias and Elizabeth, took place in a time and in a society where news of any kind would spread like a wildfire and not be easily forgotten (Lk. 1:65). The snide remark of the Pharisees to the Lord Jesus Christ that they were not born of fornication is proof of this (Jn. 8:41). This was said by the Pharisees after more than thirty years from the time of His birth. Thus, they had not forgotten the scandal of His mother's pregnancy!

The English name of "Jesus" is a *transliterated* word from the Hebrew name *Y'shua*. In other words, a new name, in English, was created for Him specifically by those men who first translated the Scriptures into English from the original languages of Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek in which they were written. The Hebrew name Y'shua, meaning *saviour* (Mt. 1:21), when "translated" into English, is *Joshua*, which was a popular and common name among the Jewish people. This is why certain men of renown with a common name were identified by the town or the city they came from (Mt. 2:23; 21:11; Lk. 1:26; 2:39; 4:16; Jn. 1:45; 18:5; Acts 2:22; 3:6).

The Lord Jesus came *unto* His own, the Jewish people, and His own knew Him not (Zech. 9:9; Mt. 10:5-7; 15:24; Jn. 1:11; Rom. 15:8). As previously mentioned, the Jewish people and their religious leaders had to ignore more than three hundred recorded prophecies in the *Old Testament* to not know of their Messiah's arrival or visitation among them (Lk. 19:41-44; 24:25-27, 44-48; Acts 3:18, 20-26)!

The life of the Lord Jesus could be divided into **three sections** during His *First Coming* [1st Advent] to planet Earth. The **first section** began with His conception on the *Feast of the Passover* in 4 B.C. and ended at twelve years of age. The **second section** began with the Lord Jesus teaching spiritual truths to Jewish theologians and religious professors for three days in the Temple after the *Feast of the Passover* in 9 A.D. (Lk. 2:41-50). We know little of what took place in His life during the next eighteen-years of His sojourn on earth (Lk. 2:51-52). The **third section** began with His being identified as the *Messiah* [the anointed One] by John upon His 30th birthday on December 21, 27 A.D. (Lk. 3:21-23). This is when He began His forty-month public

ministry. This section in the life of the Lord Jesus Christ would end with His death on the *Feast of the Passover* in 30 A.D. It was during His public ministry when the Lord Jesus healed a great number of sick, diseased, and crippled people, while bringing back to life some who had died. His feeding thousands of people with five small loaves of bread and two fish (Mt. 14:13-21; 16:1-3; Mk. 6:32-44; Lk. 9:10-17; 12:54-56; Jn. 6:1-14; 12:37; 20:30-31; 21:25) and doing the same for thousands of others with seven loaves of bread and a few fish (Mt. 15:32-39; 16:6-12; Mk. 8:1-9) at a later time was voiced throughout the land.

After His physical resurrection from the dead, on the *Feast of First Fruits* in 30 A.D., the Lord Jesus continued to teach His disciples from the Scriptures for forty days. He then physically ascended into the heavens before hundreds of eye witnesses (Mt. 27:50, 57-60; 28:1-10, 16-20; Mk. 15:37, 42-46; 16:1-7, 9-19; Lk. 23:44-46, 50-55; 24:1-7, 13-31, 33-51; Jn. 19:30-42; 20:1-9, 11-29; 21:1-24; Acts 1:1-11, 21-22; 2:22-36; 3:12-15; 1 Cor. 15:1-8).

If the physical resurrection from the dead by the Lord Jesus and His ascension into Heaven were not true, then the story of either would have become a joke, the same as *Elvis Sightings* became after the death of Elvis Presley. Instead, the resurrection of the Lord Jesus from the dead and His bodily ascension was affirmed and proclaimed throughout the world as being true and an actual fact by all those who witnessed these blessed events!

The English word *sabbath* is from the Hebrew word *shabbath* and the Greek word *sabbaton*, both of which means “cessation from labor, rest.” The “Sabbath day” refers to the seventh day of the week [Saturday] (Gen. 2:1-3). The significance of this day was not revealed to the nation of Israel until they reached Mount Sinai during their exodus from Egypt (Ex. 16:23; Neh. 9:13-14), where it was made part of the law given by the LORD [the self-existent One] to Moses (Ex. 20:1-17). The Sabbath day is a sign between the LORD and the people of Israel as a perpetual reminder of their being separated unto God (Ex. 31:13, 17). It was to be observed weekly, with no work to be done on this one day of the week (Ex. 20:8-11; Amos 8:5). The penalty for breaking the Sabbath day was death (Ex. 31:14-16)!

It was when the nation of Israel was being held captive by the empire of Babylon for seventy years when mention of an *hour* first occurred in the Holy Scriptures (Dan. 3:6, 15; 4:19, 33; 5:5). Thus, it appears that the Babylonians were among the very first to divide the daylight into twelve equal parts and the night into the same number of parts. The midnight hour became the starting point upon which the daily 24-hour cycle would be based. Keeping time in this way was then accepted by the Greeks and other nations including Rome. Therefore, a 24-hour Roman day [like ours] began at 12 midnight and ran chronologically until the 24 hours of the day were fulfilled at the next hour of 12 midnight.

However, a Jewish day, in contrast, consisted of two references to timekeeping. These two references to time were called the *night* and the *day* (Jn. 11:9), with both consisting of twelve hours each. The twelve hours of *night*, using the Jewish way of keeping time, began at

twelve midnight and was then interrupted at 6 a.m. when the twelve hour day began. This is why the third hour of the day in the Holy Bible refers to 9 a.m. (Mk. 15:25), the sixth hour to 12 p.m. [noon] (Mt. 27:45a; Lk. 23:44a), and the ninth hour refers to 3 p.m. (Mt. 27:45b-46; Mk. 15:33-34; Lk. 23:44b). The night, which had been interrupted by the day hours, then resumed at 6 p.m. and ended at 12 midnight, when the cycle would begin once again. It should be noted that one hour could be considered a *full* day (Mt: 20:6-12).

In this treatise, you will learn how the Lord Jesus Christ could be in the earth [the *paradise* side of sheol or hades] (Lk. 16:19-31; 23:42-43; Jn. 20:16-17) for “forty hours” and still fulfill His promise of bodily arising from the dead after being in the grave for three days and three nights (Jn. 2:19-21). This is necessary to do since many now believe the crucifixion of the Lord Jesus Christ took place on the Wednesday or Thursday that preceded the Sabbath [Saturday] day and not on what is called *Good Friday*. But first we will fully examine the teachings concerning the place called *Sheol* in the Old Testament and *Hades* in the New Testament.

The English word *Hell* is a new word *transliterated* by English translators from the Greek word *Hades*. The Holy Bible declares that this is a place of torment where sinners [unsaved individuals] remain after their physical death [separation from the body by the soul/spirit], until their day of judgment at the Great White Throne (Isa. 66:24; Mt. 5:22, 29-30; 8:12; 10:28; 13:42, 49-50; 18:8-9; 22:13; Mk. 9:42-48; Lk. 13:24-28; Rev. 14:9-11; 19:20; 20:10, 15).

False Christian cults and man-made religions usually deny the existence of a literal *hades* or “hell” where conscious souls/spirits are in torment. Some teach that the *hades* [hell] described in the Holy Bible is simply “the grave, a place of rest” where the departed sleep until the resurrection of the dead, when they will be judged by God. **These teachings are false!**

The Hebrew word *sheol*, as it is used in the *Old Testament*, refers to the same place as *hades* in the New Testament. It is the place where the eternal spirit of the physically dead go. It is often spoken of as being the grave, where all human activities on the earth end (Gen. 37:35; 42:38; Job 14:13; Ps. 88:3). Thus, to the man “on the earth” with no choice, but to determine by what he sees, *sheol* seems no more than the grave. It seems to be the total end of awareness, not only of the activities of life, but also of existence itself (Eccl. 9:5, 10). But Scripture tells us that *sheol* is a place in which the wicked are conscious (Ps. 9:17; 55:15) and can speak (Isa. 14:9-11; Ezek. 32:17-21). It is also described as a place of sorrow (2 Sam. 22:6; Ps. 18:5). When Jonah was in the belly of the great fish, it was like him being in the grave (Jonah 2:2).

The Hebrew word “*sheol*” of the *Old Testament*, and the Greek word “*hades*” of the *New Testament* are both used in the same way to describe this place of sorrow and torment for conscious soul/spirits awaiting their future judgment by God. This future judgment is described in Revelation 20:11-15. Most false Christian cults and man-made religions choose to reject the biblical teaching of *hades/sheol/hell*. Therefore, they do not believe the story of the two men that

(23)

the Lord Jesus told of who lived and physically died and afterwards found themselves in Hades/Sheol (Lk.16:19-31). They have concluded that this story is a PARABLE.

Thus, the question, what is a parable? A parable is a story told to illustrate and bring understanding of truth. By using stories of familiar things in the natural or material world, the Lord Jesus was able to teach important spiritual truths, such as the sower of the seed and of the end of the age (Mt. 13:1-52).

The importance of this story about the beggar Lazarus and the rich man cannot be over emphasized! Without this story we would not know that sheol or hades [hell] consisted of three sections: **1.** a place of torment. **2.** a place of comfort, called “paradise” (Lk. 23:39-43). **3.** a great gulf separating the section of torments from the section of paradise.

This story answers questions like how King David knew he would be reunited with his dead son (2 Sam. 12:13-23). It reveals what happened to the saints of the *Old Testament* like Noah, Abraham, and Moses after their physical death since the blood of sacrificed animals could only “cover” their sins and not “remove” them. This is why it was necessary for the Lord Jesus to shed His blood so that the sins of all sinners could be paid for in full and be *removed* (Heb. 10:1-18) and make them worthy of entering Heaven (Eph. 4:7-10). It also explains where the Lord Jesus had been prior to His resurrection, since He had not yet ascended to His Father in Heaven (Jn. 20:16-17).

If the story of Lazarus the beggar and the rich man is not to be accepted as an actual account of what happened to them both, after they physically died, then two questions must be asked and answered. They are:

**1.** Why would the Lord Jesus describe a situation and speak of a place such as hades/sheol [hell] that did not exist to illustrate a truth?

**2.** Why would the Lord Jesus tell a lie or spin a yarn to illustrate a truth? To lie is to sin, regardless of the motive. Yet, we know that the Lord Jesus had no sin (2 Cor. 5:21; Heb. 4:15; 1 Pet. 2:22). Thus, this story has to be a true account of what took place with these two men after their life ended on earth. Also, God is not willing for any to perish (2 Pet. 3:9). His love for sinners is why the Lord Jesus paid the penalty for all who would trust Him as their personal Savior, by faith alone, (Jn. 3:16; 1 Tim. 1:15) so they might be saved first from suffering in the torments section of hades/sheol and afterward in the “lake of fire” (Rev. 20:7-15). Besides, the Lord Jesus **NEVER** used personal names in parables, such as Lazarus or Abraham or Moses!

## **The Sabbath [Saturday] Before the Crucifixion of Israel’s Messiah**

The seventh day of the week is called the *Sabbath* by the Jewish people and *Saturday* by non-Jews! It was on a Sabbath day [Saturday], the seventh day of a week, in April 30 A.D., when

(24)

the Lord Jesus Christ and His twelve disciples came to the small village of Bethany. This was six days before the *Feast of the Passover* when He would be crucified (Jn. 11:55-12:1). The village of Bethany was located about two miles from the city of Jerusalem (Jn. 11:18), on the eastern slope of Mount Olivet, otherwise known as the *Mount of Olives* (Lk. 19:29). Among those who lived in Bethany was Lazarus, whom the Lord Jesus had raised from the dead, and his two sisters, Mary and Martha (Jn. 11:1, 11-14, 17, 38-44).

This village of Bethany had often been used by the Lord Jesus as a stopover during His travels (Mt. 26:6; Lk. 10:38-42). It was while having supper on this specific Sabbath [Saturday] of His arrival that Mary, the sister of Lazarus and Martha, anointed the feet of the Lord Jesus with oil in preparation for His burial (Mt. 26:6-12; Jn. 11:2; 12:1-11). This act by Mary reveals that of all the people in attendance on this evening, she was the only one who understood that the Lord Jesus Christ would be crucified on the coming *Feast of the Passover*. Her insight had to have come from God!

### **The “First Day” of the Week [Sunday]**

The week that was to end with what is known as the *Passion of the Christ* (Acts 1:3a) began on the day now known as *Palm Sunday*. On this morning, the Lord Jesus and His twelve disciples left Bethany for Jerusalem. In the course of this journey, He would teach His disciples (Lk. 19:11-28), then send two disciples to bring a donkey’s colt for Him to ride upon, **which was a symbol of peace, by a conquering king coming into a city** (Mt.21:1-7; Mk.11:1-7; Lk.19:29-35; Jn. 12:12, 14-15), and to weep over Jerusalem prior to entering it (Lk. 19:41-44). The Lord Jesus was greeted by crowds of people who shout ‘hosanna’ (Ps. 118:25-26) [“Save, we pray thee”] (Mt. 21:8-9; Mk. 11:8-10; Lk. 19:36-38; Jn. 12:13) as He approaches Jerusalem and then enters the Temple grounds, where He inspected and observed its dealings (Mk. 11:11a). With the coming of evening, the Lord Jesus and His disciples returned to Bethany (Mk. 11:11b).

### **The “Second Day” of the Week [Monday]**

On Monday, the second day of the week, the Lord Jesus and His disciples, once again left the village of Bethany for the city of Jerusalem. It was while on His way to Jerusalem that the Lord Jesus cursed the barren fig tree (Mt. 21:18-22; Mk. 11:12-14). This was also the day when the Lord Jesus drove out all those within the Temple premises who were engaged in the buying and selling of merchandise (Mt. 21:12-13; Mk. 11:15-18; Lk. 19:45-46). He had done this once before, early in His ministry (Jn. 2:13-16). The Lord Jesus then healed the blind and the lame (Mt. 21:14) and taught the people (Lk. 19:47). His actions in removing the Temple merchants were challenged by the chief priests and scribes who were angry with Him for doing so (Mt. 21:15-16). At the end of this day, He returned to Bethany (Mt. 21:17; Mk. 11:19), where He spent that Monday night.

(25)

## The “Third Day” of the Week [Tuesday]

On Tuesday, the third day of this week that would conclude with the death and burial of the Lord Jesus Christ, He and His disciples once again left the village of Bethany to visit the holy Temple in Jerusalem (Mk. 11:20-21, 27a). After entering the Temple grounds, the Lord Jesus was busy teaching the people who were there, when He was once again challenged by the chief priests and the scribes and the elders of the Jewish people concerning His authority over all that had taken place the day before (Mt. 21:23; Mk. 11:27b-28; Lk. 19:45-20:1-2). This was in regard to His driving from the Temple premises all those within who were engaged in the business of buying and selling merchandise (Mt. 21:12; Mk. 11:15-16; Lk. 19:45).

Afterward, during this same Tuesday morning, He was questioned by members of the Jewish political party, the Herodians, known as such because they supported the Herod dynasty (Mt. 22:15-17; Mk. 12:13-17). He was then questioned by the leaders of two Jewish religious sects, known as the Sadducees (Mt. 22:23; Mk. 12:18; Lk. 20:27), and the Pharisees (Mt. 22:34-36), in addition to the scribes (Mk. 12:28; Lk. 20:39). It was after the exchange of questions and answers between these various groups of men and the Lord Jesus Christ (Mt. 21:24-25; 22:18, 20, 41-45; Mk. 12:24, 35; Lk. 20:3-4, 23, 41, 44) that He spoke to the people and to His disciples concerning the hypocritical religious leaders, the Pharisees (Mt. 23:1-12).

It was after all of this that the Lord Jesus then personally addressed the Pharisees and the scribes. Using the strongest language of His entire ministry, the Lord Jesus Christ warned them of impending judgment by God for their hypocrisy (Mt. 23:13-33). He also told them of the men He would send and what they, the religious leaders, would do to these men (Mt. 23:34). He then told them why these men would be sent (Mt. 23:35) and that all of the things of which He had just warned them would come upon their particular generation (Mt. 23:36). These were things that He had twice before warned them and their generation (Lk. 11:45-52; 19:43-44)!

Following these warnings to the Pharisees and the scribes, the Lord Jesus then spoke of Jerusalem, its past (Mt. 23:37), the present [as of that moment] (Mt. 23:38), and its future (Mt. 23:39). This was also something that He had done twice before (Lk. 13:34-35; 19:41-44). After saying all of these things, the Lord Jesus Christ then made His observation to His disciples regarding the gifts of the people to the Temple treasury (Mk. 12:41-44; Lk. 21:1-4).

“And as some spoke of the temple, how it was adorned with [beautiful] stones and gifts, he said, As for these things which ye behold, the days will come, in which there shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down” (Lk. 21:5-6). “And as he went out of the temple, one of his disciples saith unto him, Master, see what manner of stones and what buildings are here! And Jesus, answering, said unto him, Seest thou these great buildings? There shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down” (Mk. 13:1-2). “And Jesus went out, and departed from the temple; and his disciples came to him to show him the

buildings of the temple. And Jesus said unto them, See ye not all these things? Verily I say unto you, There shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down” (Mt. 24:1-2).

“And as he sat upon the Mount of Olives (Mt. 24:3a; Mk. 13:3a) [opposite] the temple (Mk. 13:3b), the disciples (Mt. 24:3b) Peter, and James, and John, and Andrew (Mk. 13:3c) came unto him privately (Mt. 24:3c), and they (Lk. 21:7a) asked him (Mk. 13:3d; Lk. 21:7b) privately (Mk. 13:3e), saying” (Lk. 21:7c), **[The Disciples 1st Question]** “Master, but (Lk. 21:7d) Tell us, (Mt. 24:3d; Mk. 13:4a) when shall these things be?” (Mt. 24:3e; Lk. 21:7e). [*The Lord Jesus did not answer this question. The reason being He had already done so earlier that morning when He told the scribes and the Pharisees, “Verily I say unto you, All these things shall come upon this generation” (Mt. 23:36).*]

**[The Disciples 2nd Question]** “And what sign will there be when these things shall come to pass?” (Lk. 21:7f).

**[The Lord Jesus Answered]** “And when ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that its desolation is [near]. Then let them who are in Judea flee to the mountains; and let them who are in the midst of it depart; and let not them that are in the countries enter into it. For these are the days of vengeance, that all things which are written may be fulfilled. “But woe unto them that are with child, and to them that [nurse *children*], in those days! For there shall be great distress in the land, and wrath upon this people. And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations; and Jerusalem shall be trodden down by the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled” (Lk. 21:20-24).

“But before all these, they shall lay their hands on you, and persecute *you*, delivering *you* up to the synagogues, and into prisons, being brought before kings and rulers for my name’s sake. And it shall turn to you for a testimony. Settle it, therefore, in your hearts, not to meditate before what ye shall answer; For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to [contradict nor withstand]. And ye shall be betrayed both by parents, and brethren, and kinsfolk, and friends; and *some* of you shall they cause to be put to death. And ye shall be hated of all men for my name’s sake. But there shall not an hair of your head perish. In your patience possess ye your souls” (Lk. 21:12-19).

**[The Disciples 3rd Question]** “And what shall be the sign of thy coming?” (Mt. 24:3f).

**[The Lord Jesus Answered]** “Take heed that no man deceive you (Mt. 24:4b; Mk. 13:5b). Take heed that ye be not deceived (Lk. 21:8b); for many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ (Mt. 24:5a; Mk. 13:6a; Lk. 21:8c); and shall deceive many (Mt. 24:5b; Mk. 13:6b) and the time draweth near. Go ye not, therefore, after them (Lk. 21.8d). And (Mt. 24:6a; Mk. 13:7a) when

(Mk. 13:7b; Lk. 21:9a) ye shall hear of wars and rumors of wars, be ye not troubled; for all *these things* must first come to pass, but the end shall not be [at once] (Mt. 24:6b; Mk. 13:7c; Lk. 21:9b).

“For (Mt. 24:7a; Mk. 13:8a) nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom; and (Mt. 24:7b; Mk. 13:8b; Lk. 21:10b-11a) there shall be (Mt. 24:7c; Mk. 13:8c) great (Lk. 21:11b) earthquakes in [various] places (Mk. 13:8d; Lk. 21:11c), and there (Mt. 24:7d; Mk. 13:8e; Lk. 21:11d) shall be famines, and pestilences; and (Mt. 24:7f; Lk. 21:11e) earthquakes in [various] places (Mt. 24:7g) and fearful sights and great signs shall there be from heaven (Lk. 21:11f). All (Mt. 24:8a) these are the beginning of sorrows (Mt. 24:8b; Mk. 13:8g).

“But take heed to yourselves; for they shall deliver you up to councils; and in the synagogues ye shall be beaten; and ye shall be brought before rulers and kings for my sake, for a testimony against them. And the gospel must first be [proclaimed] among all nations (Mk.13:9-10). Then shall they deliver you up to be afflicted, and shall kill you; and ye shall be hated of all nations for my name’s sake. And then shall many be offended, and shall betray one another, and shall hate one another (Mt. 24:9-10). But when they shall lead you, and deliver you up, take no thought beforehand what ye shall speak, neither do ye premeditate; but whatever shall be given you in that hour, that speak ye; for it is not ye that speak, but the Holy [Spirit]. Now brother shall betray brother to death, and the father, his son; and children shall rise up against *their* parents, and shall cause them to be put to death. And ye shall be hated of all *men* for my name’s sake; but he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved (Mk. 13:11-13).

“And many false prophets shall rise, and shall deceive many. And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall [grow] cold. But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved. And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness *unto* all nations; and then shall the end come (Mt. 24:11-14). “But (Mk. 13:14a), When ye (Mt. 24:15a; Mk. 13:14c), therefore, shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place (Mt. 24:15c) standing where it ought not (Mk. 13:14d), then let them who are in Judea flee into the mountains (Mt. 24:16; Mk. 13:14d). And (Mk. 13:15a) let him that is on the housetop not go down (Mt. 24:17a; Mk. 13:15b) into the house (Mk. 13:15c) to take anything out of his house (Mt. 24:17b; Mk. 13:15d). And (Mk. 13:16a) Neither let him who is in the field return back (Mt. 24:18a) again (Mk. 13:16b) to take up his clothes (Mt. 24:18b; Mk. 13:16c).

“And woe to those who are with child, and to them that are [nursing *their children*] in those days! And pray that your flight be not in the winter (Mt. 24:19-20a; Mk. 13:17-18), neither on the sabbath day (Mt. 24:20b). For (Mt. 24:21a; Mk. 13:19a) in those days shall be affliction (Mk. 13:19b) then shall be great tribulation (Mt. 24:21b), such as was not since the beginning of the (Mt. 24:21c; Mk. 13:19c) creation (Mk. 13:19d) of the world (Mt. 24:21d), which God created unto this time (Mk. 13:19e), no, nor ever shall be (Mt. 24:21e; Mk.13:19f). And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved; but for the elect’s sake those days shall be shortened (Mt. 24:22). And except the Lord had shortened those days, no flesh should be saved; but for the elect’s sake, whom he hath chosen, he hath shortened the days (Mk. 13:20).

“And (Mk. 13:21a) then if any man shall say to you, Lo, here *is* Christ, or, lo, *he is* there; believe *him* not. For false Christs and false prophets shall rise, and shall show (Mt. 24:23-24a; Mk. 13:21b-22a) great (Mt. 24:24b) signs and wonders (Mt. 24:24c; Mk. 13:22b), to seduce (Mk. 13:22c) insomuch that (Mt. 24:24d), if *it were* possible (Mt. 24:24e; Mk. 13:22d), they shall deceive (Mt. 24:24f) even (Mk. 13:22e) the (Mt. 24:24g; Mk. 13:22f) very (Mt. 24:24h) elect (Mt. 24:24i; Mk. 13:22g). But take heed; behold, I have foretold you all things (Mk. 13:23).

“Behold, I have told you before. Wherefore, if they shall say unto you, Behold, he is in the desert; go not forth; behold, *he is* in the secret chambers; believe *it* not. For as the lightning cometh out of the east, and shineth even unto the west, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. For wherever the carcass is, there will the eagles be gathered together (Mt. 24:25-28).

“And there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring; Men’s hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth; for the powers of heaven shall be shaken (Lk. 21:25-26). But in those days (Mk. 13:24a), Immediately after the tribulation of those days (Mt. 24:29a) after that tribulation (Mk. 13:24b) the sun shall be darkened, and the moon shall not give its light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers that are in the heavens shall be shaken (Mt. 24:29b; Mk. 13:24c-25).

“And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven; and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn (Mt. 24:30a), and then shall they see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with (Mt. 24:30b; Mk. 13:26a; Lk. 21:27a) great (Mk. 13:26b) power and (Mt. 24:30c; Mk. 13:26c; Lk. 21:27b) great (Mt. 24:30d; Lk. 21:27c) glory (Mt. 24:30e; Mk. 13:26d; Lk. 21:27d). And then shall he send his angels (Mt. 24:31a; Mk. 13:27a) with a great sound of a trumpet (Mt. 24:31b), and (Mt. 24:31c; Mk. 13:27b) they (Mt. 24:31d) shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other (Mt. 24:31e) from the uttermost part of the earth to the uttermost part of heaven (Mk. 13:27c). And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth [near] (Lk. 21:28).

“Now learn a parable of the fig tree: When its branch is yet tender, and putteth forth leaves, ye know that summer is [near] (Mt. 24:32; Mk. 13:28). So ye, in like manner, when ye shall see these things come to pass, know that it is [near], *even* at the doors (Mt. 24:33; Mk. 13:29). Behold the fig tree, and all the trees; When they now shoot forth, ye see and know of your own selves that summer is now [near] at hand (Lk. 21:29b-30). So also ye, when ye see these things come to pass, know that the kingdom of God is [near] at hand (Lk. 21:31).

“Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass (Mt. 24:34a; Mk. 13:30a; Lk. 21:32a) away (Lk. 21:32b), till all (Mt. 24:34b; Mk. 13:30b; Lk. 21:32c) these things (Mt. 24:34c; Mk. 13:30c) be fulfilled (Mt. 24:34d; Mk. 13:30d; Lk. 21:32d). Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away” (Mt. 24:35; Mk. 13:31; Lk. 21:33).

**[The Disciples 4th Question]** “And what *shall* be the sign when all these things shall be fulfilled?” (Mk. 13:4b).

**[The Lord Jesus Answered]** “But of that day and (Mt. 24:36a; Mk. 13:32a) that (Mk. 13:32b) hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels (Mt. 24:36b; Mk. 13:32c) of heaven (Mt. 24:36c), who are in heaven, neither the Son (Mk. 13:32d), but (Mt. 24:36d; Mk. 13:32e) the Father (Mk. 13:32f), my Father only (Mt. 24:36e). Take heed, watch and pray; for ye know not when the time is (Mk. 13:33).

“But as the days of Noah were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. For as in the days that were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark, And knew not until the flood came, and took them all away, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. “Then shall two be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left. Two *women* shall be grinding at the mill; the one shall be taken, and the other left. Watch, therefore; for ye know not what hour your Lord doth come (Mt. 24:37-42).

“*For the Son of man is* like a man taking a far journey, who left his house, and gave authority to his servants, and to every man his work, and commanded the porter to watch. Watch ye, therefore; for ye know not when the master of the house cometh, at [evening], or at midnight, or at [cockcrow], or in the morning; Lest, coming suddenly, he find you sleeping. And what I say unto you I say unto all, Watch (Mk. 13:34-37). “And take heed to yourselves, lest at any time your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness, and cares of this life, and so that day come upon you unawares, For like a snare shall it come on all them that dwell on the face of the whole earth. Watch ye, therefore, and pray always, that ye may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that shall come to pass, and to stand before the Son of man (Lk. 21:34-36).

“But know this, that if the [householder] had known in what watch the thief would come, he would have watched, and would not have [allowed] his house to be broken [into]. Therefore be ye also ready; for in such an hour as ye think not the Son of man cometh. “Who, then, is a faithful and wise servant, whom his lord hath made ruler over his household, to give them [food] in due season? Blessed is that servant, whom his lord, when he cometh, shall find so doing. Verily I say unto you that he shall make him ruler over all his goods. “But and if that evil servant shall say in his heart, My lord delayeth his coming; And shall begin to smite his fellow servants, and to eat and drink with the [drunkards], The lord of that servant shall come in a day when he looketh not for him, and in an hour that he is not aware of, And shall cut him asunder, and appoint him his portion with the hypocrites; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth (Mt. 24:43-51).

“Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, who took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom. And five of them were wise, and five were foolish. They that

were foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them; but the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps. While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept. And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him. Then all those virgins arose and trimmed their lamps. “And the foolish said unto the wise, Give us of your oil; for our lamps are gone out. But the wise answered, saying, Not so, lest there be not enough for us and you; but go rather to them that sell, and buy for yourselves. And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came, and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage; and the door was shut. “Afterward came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us. But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, I know you not. Watch, therefore; for ye know neither the day nor the hour in which the Son of man cometh (Mt. 25:1-13).

“For *the kingdom of heaven* is like a man traveling into a far country, *who* called his own servants, and delivered unto them his goods. And unto one he gave five talents, to another two, and to another one, to every man according to his ability; and straightway took his journey. Then he that had received the five talents went and traded with the same, and made other five talents. And likewise he that *had received* two, he also gained other two. But he that had received one went and [dug] in the earth, and hid his lord’s money. “After a long time the lord of those servants cometh, and reckoneth with them. And so he that had received five talents came and brought other five talents, saying, Lord, thou deliveredst unto me five talents; behold, I have gained beside them five talents more. His lord said unto him, Well done, *thou* good and faithful servant; thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things. Enter thou into the joy of thy lord.

“He also that had received two talents came and said, Lord, thou deliveredst unto me two talents; behold, I have gained two other talents beside them. His lord said unto him, Well done, good and faithful servant; thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things. Enter thou into the joy of thy lord. “Then he that had received the one talent came and said, Lord, I knew thee, that thou art a hard man, reaping where thou hast not sown, and gathering where thou hast not [spread], And I was afraid, and went and hid thy talent in the earth; lo, *there* thou hast *what is* thine.

“His lord answered and said unto him, *Thou* wicked and slothful servant, thou knewest that I reap where I sowed not, and gather where I have not [spread]? Thou oughtest, therefore, to have put my money to the exchangers, and *then*, at my coming, I should have received mine own with [interest]. “Take, therefore, the talent from him, and give *it* unto him who hath ten talents. For unto every one that hath shall be given, and he shall have abundance; but from him that hath not shall be taken away even that which he hath. And cast the unprofitable servant into outer darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth” (Mt. 25:14-30).(17).

**[The Disciples 5th Question]** “And what shall be the sign of the end of the [age]?” (Mt. 24:3g).

**[The Lord Jesus Answered]** “When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory. And before him shall be gathered all the nations; and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth *his* sheep from the goats. “And he shall set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left. Then shall the King say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world; For I was [hungry], and ye gave me [food]; I was thirsty, and ye gave me drink; I was a stranger, and ye took me in; Naked, and ye clothed me; I was sick, and ye visited me; I was in prison, and ye came unto me.

“Then shall the righteous answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee [hungry], and fed *thee*; or thirsty, and gave *thee* drink? When saw we thee a stranger, and took *thee* in; or naked, and clothed *thee*? Or when saw we thee sick, or in prison, and came unto thee? And the King shall answer and say unto them, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye have done *it* unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done it unto me.

“Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels; For I was [hungry], and ye gave me no [food]; I was thirsty, and ye gave me no drink; I was a stranger, and ye took me not in; naked, and ye clothed me not; sick, and in prison, and ye visited me not.

“Then shall they also answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee [hungry], or athirst, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister unto thee? Then shall he answer them, saying, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye did it not to one of the least of these, ye did it not to me. And these shall go away into everlasting punishment, but the righteous into life eternal (Mt. 25:31-46). Ye know that after two days is *the feast of the passover*, and the Son of man is betrayed to be crucified” (Mt. 26:2).

At the end of this Tuesday, the Lord Jesus and His twelve disciples returned to the village of Bethany. It was while at the evening meal that Mary, the sister of Lazarus and Martha, poured a very expensive ointment upon the head of the Lord Jesus while he was eating (Mt. 26:6-13). This took place in the house of a man known as *Simon the leper* who also lived in Bethany. Evidently, this man Simon had been cured of leprosy by the Lord Jesus during an earlier sojourn through Bethany, since a leper was not allowed to mingle or to socialize with non-lepers (Lev. 13:45-46; Num. 5:2-3). Again, it seems evident that Mary was the only one who was aware of the impending death of the Lord Jesus, since she had anointed His feet for the same reason three nights earlier (Jn. 11:1-2; 12:1-7). It was on this day that the chief priests and scribes were making plans on how to capture and then kill the Lord Jesus (Mt. 26:2-5; Mk. 14:1-2; Lk. 22:1-2). This is also the day when Judas, under the influence of Satan, went to betray the Lord Jesus to the chief priests and captains (Mt. 26:14-16; Mk. 14:10-11; Lk. 22:3-6).

## The “Fourth Day” of the Week [Wednesday]

There is nothing recorded in the Holy Bible as to what the Lord Jesus Christ and His twelve disciples did or said on this day.

## The “Fifth Day” of the Week [Thursday]

This *Feast of the Passover* would take place between the hours of 6 p.m. Thursday evening and 6 p.m. Friday evening. This would be the most unique passover day ever to be celebrated with *three* separate sacrifices being offered to God for the sins committed against Him. These three separate passover sacrifices would be for the following reasons: **1.** for the sins of those in a **household** (Ex. 12:1-28) **2.** for the sins of the **high priest and the nation of Israel** (Lev. 4:3, 13, 32-35; 9:6-7; 23:4-5; Heb. 7:26-27) **3.** for all of the sinful thoughts and deeds by **mankind** throughout the ages (Lev. 17:11; Isa. 53; Jn. 1:29; 1 Cor. 5:7; Heb. 9:22, 28; 10:4, 10-14, 17-18; 1 Pet. 1:18-19; 2:24; 3:18).

The sequence of events on this *Passover* evening appears to be in the following order: **1.** Peter and John prepared the Passover meal in the upper guest room of a certain man’s house who the Lord Jesus told them of (Mt. 26:17-19; Mk. 14:12-16; Lk. 22:7-13). **2.** The Lord Jesus partakes of the Passover meal with His disciples and rebukes their contention (Mt. 26:20-21a; Mk. 14:17-18a; Lk. 22:14-18, 24-30). **3.** He then washes their feet (Jn. 13:1-20). **4.** He predicts being betrayed. **5.** He identifies Judas Iscariot as His betrayer (Mt. 26:21b-25; Mk. 14:18b-21; Lk. 22:21-23; Jn. 13:21-29). **6.** Judas then departs (Jn. 13:30-31a). **7.** The Lord Jesus once again rebukes their contention (Lk. 22:24-27). **8.** The Lord’s Supper [communion] is inaugurated and celebrated (Mt. 26:26-29; Mk. 14:22-25; Lk. 22:19-20). **9.** The disciples are then told of a future conflict (Lk. 22:35-38), his departure (Jn. 13:33), and to love the brethren (Jn. 13:34-35), Peter’s future denial (Jn. 13:37b-38), the Rapture (Jn. 14:1-3), about Himself (Jn. 14:6-14), and the coming of the Holy Spirit, and His ministry (Jn. 14:15-33). **10.** They sing a hymn and leave the upper room for the *Mount of Olives* while being taught and warned of future tribulation (Mt. 26:30; Mk. 14:26; Lk. 22:39; Jn. 15-18).

It is on the Mount of Olives that He tells of how they will *all* abandon Him, with them all denying they would do so while professing loyalty to Him (Mt. 26:31-35; Mk. 14:27-31; Lk. 22:31-38). Peter again declares his faithfulness to the Lord Jesus (Mt. 26:33) and is told once again that he will deny the Lord Jesus *three* times before the ‘cock crows’ [the Temple *crier* usually did so about 4:30 a.m.] (Mt. 26:34; Lk. 22:34). Afterward, they all walked to the garden in Gethsemane, where the Lord Jesus prayed *three* times that, God willing, He would not be separated [death] from the other two members of the triune Godhead [God, the Father and God, the Holy Spirit] (Acts 17:29; Col. 2:9). During this time He also prayed *three* times for His disciples, who fell asleep *three* times, and were waken by Him *three* times (Isa. 53:10-12; Mt. 26:36-46; Mk. 14:32-42; Lk. 22:40-46; Jn. 18:1). All of these things took place between Thursday night at 6 p.m. and 12 a.m. on Friday morning.

## The “Sixth Day” of the Week [Friday]

The beginning of the sixth day of this unique week began at 12 midnight when the Lord Jesus is betrayed by Judas who identified Him with a kiss to the *band* of three hundred Roman soldiers who came to arrest Him. The religious leaders also armed a huge mob of people with clubs and swords who came with them (Mt. 26:46-50; Mk. 14:43-46; Lk. 22:47-48; Jn. 18:1-9). Peter attempted to defend the Lord Jesus by trying to sever the head of a servant of the high priest but only cut off his ear. The Lord Jesus healed the man’s ear while all of His disciples ran away from the scene of His capture (Mt.26:51-52; Mk.14:47-52; Lk. 22:49-53; Jn. 18:10-12).

During the next several hours the Lord Jesus would be “illegally” tried *three* times by the Jewish religious and political leaders. The **first trial** was a *preliminary* hearing before a high priest named Annas (Mk. 14:53-54; Lk. 22:54a; Jn. 18:13-23). The **second trial** was an *informal* trial before the high priest of that day named Caiaphas along with the Sanhedrin (Mt. 26:57-75; Mk. 14:55-65; Lk. 22:54-65; Jn. 18:24). The **third trial** is a *formal* trial by the Sanhedrin (Mt. 27:1; Mk. 15:1; Lk. 22:66-71; Jn. 18:28).

The three times that Peter denied the Lord Jesus (Mt. 26:58, 69-75; Mk. 14:54, 66-72; Lk. 22:54b-62; Jn. 18:15-18, 25-27) and the suicide of Judas Iscariot (Mt. 27:3-10; Acts 1:18-19) took place about 4:30 a.m., which was prior to the start of the third *Jewish* trial that ended before 6 a.m. The Friday *night* hours were then interrupted by the Friday *day* hours that began at 6 a.m.

The day hours on this Friday began with the questioning of the Lord Jesus by the Roman procurator named Pontius Pilate in the first of **three** illegal trials by *Gentile* judges (Mt. 27:1-2; Mk. 15:1-5; Lk. 23:1-3). Pilate could find no fault in the Lord Jesus and for that reason, sent Him to Herod Antipas (Mk. 15:2-5; Lk. 23:4-7; Jn. 18:29b-38). This second gentile trial under Herod Antipas involved him questioning the Lord Jesus while having him physically abused (Lk. 23:8-11a). Herod Antipas then sent the Lord Jesus back to Pontius Pilate. This exchange caused a new friendship between both men (Lk. 23:11b-12). It was during this third trial when Pilate said two more times that he found no fault with the Lord Jesus (Lk. 23:13-22; Jn. 18:28-29a).

There was an annual tradition, when one prisoner could be released by the Roman procurator at this particular time of the year. Pilate offered to free the Lord Jesus in this way but the Jewish religious leaders insisted the Lord Jesus be crucified for making Himself to be the *Son of God* (Jn. 19:7). Upon hearing this, Pilate became frightened (Jn. 19:8) and again attempted to free the Lord Jesus. The religious leaders and the people in the crowd rejected Pilate’s offer to free the Lord Jesus (Mt. 27:15-23; Mk. 15:6-14; Lk. 23:13-17; Jn. 19:12-15) and insisted that Pilate release a man named Barabbas, who was guilty of robbery, murder, and sedition against Rome (Mt. 27:24-26a; Mk. 15:15a; Lk. 23:18-25; Jn. 18:39-40). It was when the Jewish religious leaders threatened to report Pontius Pilate to the Roman emperor for not crucifying a man who said He was a king that Pilate delivered the Lord Jesus over to be crucified, since Roman law said there could be no king but Caesar (Mt. 27:27-31; Mk. 15:16-20; Lk. 23:26a; Jn. 19:4-16).

Pilate then had the Lord Jesus scourged (Mt. 27:26b; Mk. 15:15b), while Roman soldiers mocked Him by making a crown of thorns, placed it on His head, and gave Him a robe of purple that signified royalty. Roman soldiers once again repeatedly hit, beat, and punched the Lord Jesus causing His face to become so disfigured that he didn't even look like a man (Mk. 15:16-20; Jn.19:1-3). This act fulfilled an *Old Testament* messianic prophecy (Isa. 52:13-53:12).

The Lord Jesus was then given a crossbeam to carry to a place called Golgotha [Calvary] where He would be crucified. It was while the Lord Jesus was carrying this crossbeam that He became the *scapegoat* for all of mankind (Lev. 16:7-10, 20-22). This is when all of the sins of mankind were literally placed upon Him and He was made sin as a result (2 Cor. 5:21). He then physically faltered and the crossbeam was forcefully laid upon *Simon of Cyrene* to carry (Mt. 27:32; Mk. 15:20-21; Lk. 23:26). While on His way to be crucified, the Lord Jesus warned weeping women of the judgment that was to fall upon Jerusalem (Lk. 23:27-31) and which would be fulfilled forty years later in 70 A.D.

Upon His arrival at *Calvary* [Latin] meaning *the skull* or *Golgotha* [Hebrew] meaning the *place of a skull* (Mt. 27:33; Mk. 15:22; Lk. 23:33a; Jn. 19:17), the Lord Jesus was offered a sedative drink that He refused (Mt. 27:34; Mk. 15:23). The charge for which He was being crucified was written in Hebrew, Greek, and Aramaic and placed at the top of His cross under protest by the Jewish chief priests (Jn. 19:21-22). Portions of what was written by Pilate are recorded in the gospels of Matthew, Luke, and John. Pieced together it read: “**This is** (Mt. 27:37a; Lk. 23:38a) **Jesus** (Mt. 27:32b; Jn. 19:19a) **of Nazareth** (Jn. 19:19b) **the King of the Jews**” (Mt. 27:37c; Lk. 23:38b; Jn. 19:19c).

The Lord Jesus fulfilled the prophetic significance of the *Feast of Passover* (Ex. 12:1-28; Lev. 17:11; 23:4-5; Dt. 16:1-2, 5-7; Ps. 51:5; Jn. 1:29; Rom. 3:23; 1 Cor. 5:7; 2 Cor. 5:21; Heb. 9:22; 1 Pet.1:18-19) by being crucified between two men guilty of robbery, murder, and sedition against Roman rule (Mt. 27:35a-38; Lk. 23:33b; Jn. 19:18). The three Gentile trials that began with the questioning by Pontius Pilate took place between the hours of 6 a.m. and 9 a.m. on what is called *Good Friday* (Mk. 15:24-25). [It should be noted that the sixth hour of John 19:14 is not based upon the Jewish way of timekeeping. Thus, it should not be confused with the *sixth hour* [12 noon] recorded in Matthew 27:45, when “. . . there was darkness over all the land.”]

The following sequence of events took place between the hours of 9 a.m. and 12 p.m. on this Friday before the Sabbath [Saturday]: The Lord Jesus Christ uttered His **first cry** from the cross for those who were guilty of His being crucified (Lk. 23:34a) while Roman soldiers gambled for His garments (Mt. 27:35b; Mk. 15:24; Lk. 23:34b; Jn. 19:23-24). The Lord Jesus is mocked by people passing by His cross, including the Jewish religious leaders and the two men crucified next to Him and by Roman soldiers (Mt. 27:39-44; Mk. 15:26-32; Lk. 23:38). One of the crucified men then comes to believe the Lord Jesus is indeed the promised Messiah of the *Old Testament* (Lk. 23:39-42). The **second cry** by the Lord Jesus assures this man of salvation and being with Him in the *Paradise* section of “Hades/Sheol” [hell] later that day (Lk. 23:43).

His **third cry** is for the care of His mother to the disciple John (Jn. 13:23; 19:26-27; 21:7, 20-25). Thus concluded the morning hours of *Good Friday* when the Lord Jesus was crucified!

The next series of events began at 12 p.m. [noon], as darkness came over all the land until 3 p.m., during which time, *God, the Son, is separated [spiritual death] from the presence of the other two members of the triune Godhead (Mt. 27:45; Mk. 15:33; Lk. 23:44-45a)*. His **fourth cry** from the cross revealed His spiritual need (Mt. 27:46; Mk. 15:34). His **fifth cry** revealed His physical need (Mt. 27:48; Mk. 15:36; Jn. 19:28-30a). His **sixth cry** declared His mission successfully completed (Jn. 19:30b). The **seventh cry** by the Lord Jesus was the gift of His spirit to *God, the Father (Mt. 27:50; Mk. 15:37; Lk. 23:46; Jn. 19:30c)* when He dismissed it from His body. Thus, *no man took His life (Jn. 10:17-18)*. It was now 3 p.m., on this day before the Sabbath [Saturday]. This is the moment when the *Age of Law* that began with the acceptance of the law of God by the nation of Israel (Ex. 20:1-24:8) was fulfilled (Mt. 5:17-18) and ceased to be and when the *Age of Grace* began.

Most people mistakenly focus on the physical aspect of the crucifixion and think the scourging (Mt. 27:24-26) suffered by the Lord Jesus, along with his crucifixion and his agonizing death, is what paid the price for their sins (Ps. 22:1, 7-18). The truth of the matter is that what really paid the penalty for the sins of all who would believe in Him (Jn. 3:16; 20:30-31) was His being separated [death] from the fellowship of God, the Father, and God, the Holy Spirit, for three hours from 12 pm to 3 pm (Mt. 27:45-46; Mk. 15:33-34).

The word death means “separation.” It was *knowing* He would be separated from the other two members of the triune Godhead that caused His anguish in the garden during the evening before (Mt. 26:38-39, 42, 44; Mk. 14:36; Lk. 22:42-44) and in his humanity to question why he had been forsaken by Him (Mk. 15:34). His separation [death], from the other two members of the triune Godhead was more than enough to pay for all of the sins committed by those who would not be separated [death] from God by simply trusting, by faith alone (Rom 4:5; Eph. 2:8-9), in His completed and atoning work [Paid in full] for them (Jn. 19:30).

Isaiah 52:13-53:12 describes the One who would become the vicarious sacrifice for sin and the salvation of all who would simply *believe* in Him. Isaiah 53:5 reads, “. . . and with his stripes we are healed.” The Hebrew word used in this passage was the SINGULAR word for ‘stripe.’ This Hebrew word was incorrectly translated into English with the PLURAL word “stripes.” The “stripe” was referring to God, the Son, the Lord Jesus Christ, being separated from the fellowship of God, the Father, and God, the Holy Spirit. The *Word of God* is always consistent and never contradicts itself!

The holy Scriptures reveal that there are **seven** ministries [services] being performed by God, the Holy Spirit, in our present *Age of Grace*. The first four of these ministries [services] take place instantly and simultaneously at the very moment when a man or a woman believes [trusts] the Lord Jesus as their personal *Redeemer* [Savior] by faith alone and nothing else

(Jn. 3:15-18; 20:30-31). These ministries are: **1. Regeneration** [The spiritual new birth from above.] (Jn. 3:3-8; Ti.3:5), **2. Baptizing** [Forever *identifies* the new believer with the Lord Jesus Christ] (Rom. 6:3-4; 1 Cor. 12:13; Gal. 3:27-28; Eph. 4:5; Col. 2:9-12), **3. Indwelling** [God, the Holy Spirit takes up residence within the new believer where He shall be their life-force throughout eternity.] (Rom. 8:9-11; 1 Cor. 3:16; 6:19-20; 1 Jn. 3:23-24; 4:11-16), **4. Sealing** [This ministry guarantees that the new believer can never lose their salvation. Thus, the saying that once saved, always saved.] ( Jn. 3:15; 6:47; 10:27-30; 2 Cor. 1:22; Eph. 1:13; 4:30).

The remaining three ministries [services] by God, the Holy Spirit are: **5. Filling** [This allows the Holy Spirit to rule over the believer based upon the conduct and thoughts of the believer on a day by day basis.] (Rom.8:12-13; Gal. 5:16; Col. 2:6; 1 Th. 5:19), **6. Convicting** [This ministry convicts each man and woman in the world of their sin and rebellion against a holy God and their need of a redeemer [Savior] for the forgiveness of their sins] (Jn. 14:26; 16:7-11), **7. Restraining** [This ministry, which has prevented mankind from rebelling and sinning even more than it has against its creator God will cease with the Rapture.] (2 Th. 2:7)

It has been the *restraining ministry* of God, the Holy Spirit, that has hindered mankind in its rebellion against God! It is after the Rapture has taken place that God will cease restraining the evil deeds of mankind and allow the Antichrist to come into power (2 Th. 2:8-12) and become a worldwide dictator (Rev. 13:7). In the meantime, God, the Holy Spirit will continue to perform His other six ministries until the Second Coming [2nd Advent] to planet Earth by the Lord Jesus Christ which will then end the *Age of Grace* and begin the *Millennial Kingdom Age*.

The next sequence of events began with the veil that separated the holy place from the *holy of holies* in the Temple being torn in half from the top to the bottom (Mt. 27:51a; Mk. 15:38; Lk. 23:45b). This indicated that it was no longer necessary for a human priest to intercede for sinners to God because all sinners now had direct access to God, the Father in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ who is their heavenly intercessor and advocate (Heb. 7:25-27; 1 Jn. 2:1-2). Also, a huge earthquake took place (Mt. 27:51b) and graves were opened (Mt. 27:52a). Those in these opened graves arose from the dead AFTER the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus on *Resurrection Sunday*. They then went into the city of Jerusalem (Mt. 27:52b-53). [*The Scriptures do not identify who these people were who were resurrected from the dead or where they visited in Jerusalem or who they spoke to in Jerusalem or for how long they stayed in Jerusalem.*] A Roman centurion and his men became believers in the Lord Jesus Christ after witnessing all of these things take place (Mt. 27:54; Lk. 23:47). Other witnesses to these happenings were the women who had served the Lord Jesus during His public ministry (Mt. 27:55-56).

As the Sabbath evening approached, which would begin at 6 p.m., the legs of the men crucified alongside the Lord Jesus were broken by Roman soldiers to cause them to quickly die of suffocation and before the beginning of the Jewish sabbath. The death of the Lord Jesus was confirmed with the thrust of a Roman spear which made the breaking of His legs unnecessary

(Jn. 19:33-37). This fulfilled the prophecies which described the death of the promised *Messiah* [the anointed One] of Israel (Ps. 22:1, 7, 14-18; 34:20; Zech. 12:10; Isa. 52:13-54; Dan. 9:26).

A rich man identified as Joseph of Arimathaea who was a disciple [learner] of the Lord Jesus went to Pilate and asked for permission to take His body down from the cross to bury Him. Pilate approved his request and Joseph, along with a Pharisee named Nicodemus (Jn. 3:1-21), wrapped the body of the Lord Jesus in a clean linen cloth with about 100 pounds of myrrh and aloe spices. They then placed the body of the Lord Jesus in a new and unused burial tomb owned by Joseph and sealed it with a huge stone (Mt. 27:57-60; Mk. 15:42-46; Lk. 23:50-54; Jn. 19:38-42). The burial of the Lord Jesus fulfilled the prophetic significance of the *Feast of Unleavened Bread* (Ex. 12:14-19; 23:15; Lev. 23:6-8; Dt. 16:3-4, 8, 16; Jn. 6:35; 1 Cor. 5:7) and the prophecy in Isaiah 53:9 and 53:12. The witnesses to all of these proceedings included Mary Magdalene, two other women named Mary, Salome, and many other women who had served the Lord Jesus during His travels (Mt. 27:61; Mk. 15:40-41; Lk. 23:55). Thus, at 6 p.m. the day ended and the three hours from 3 p.m. to 6 p.m. counted as the *first day* in the 'grave' [*sheol* in Hebrew; *hades* in Greek] for the Lord Jesus. The night hours of Good Friday that had begun at 12 midnight and been interrupted by the day hours between 6 a.m. and 6 p.m. were then completed between the hours of 6 p.m. to 12 midnight and was credited with being the *first night* in the grave [*sheol* or *hades*] for the Lord Jesus Christ.

### **The “Seventh Day” of the Week [Saturday]**

The *second night* in the grave [*sheol* or *hades*] for the Lord Jesus began at 12 midnight on this Sabbath day and was interrupted by the *second day* in the grave between 6 a.m. and 6 p.m. His *second night* in the grave ended at 12 midnight that Saturday evening. It was during the morning of this Sabbath day that the chief priests and Pharisees disobeyed God's *law of the sabbath* (Ex. 20:8-11; 31:12-17) and asked Pilate to post a Roman guard at the tomb of the Lord Jesus (Mt. 27:62-64). [*It is ironic that they were aware and conscious of the promise by the Lord Jesus to rise from the dead after three days and three nights in the grave, while His disciples were not (Mt. 27:63; Jn. 2:19, 21; 20:9)*]. The Pharisees request for a Roman guard at the tomb of the Lord Jesus was granted by Pilate and secured by them personally (Mt. 27:65-66). The Sabbath portion of this day ended at 6:00 p.m.

### **The “Eighth Day” of Crucifixion Week [Sunday]**

The *third night* in the grave [*sheol* or *hades*] for the Lord Jesus began at 12 a.m. on this eighth day of crucifixion week and ended at 6 a.m. His *third day* in the grave began at 6 a.m. and ended at 7 a.m. with His bodily resurrection from the dead (Mt. 28:1-8; Mk. 16:2-9; Lk. 24:1-11; Jn. 20:1-8) which fulfilled the prophetic significance of the *Feast of First Fruits* (Ex. 23:16; Lev. 23:1, 9-14; 1 Cor. 15:20-23). Thus, the Lord Jesus is the first-born from the dead (Col. 1:18) and is our great high priest (Rom. 8:34; Heb. 4:14-15; 7:25; 9:24-26). [*“First fruits” is the first of*

*three harvest feasts to be celebrated each year by the nation of Israel*]. Those who were resurrected from the dead after His resurrection during the same day (Mt. 27:52-53) were part of the first harvest of redeemed people offered unto the LORD. [In *The Numerical Bible*, F. W. Grant, Loizeaux Brothers, the fundamental thought for the number *eight* when used in the Holy Scriptures is *New Beginning* which this eighth day certainly was.]

The Lord Jesus Christ was in the *paradise* section of hades [sheol] (Lk. 16:19-31) with Abraham, Moses, and Lazarus for a total of *forty hours* from 3 p.m. on Friday afternoon to 7 a.m. on the following Sunday morning [three days and three nights] after which He bodily arose from the dead. The fundamental thought for the number *forty* in the Holy Bible is *full testing according to the whole responsibility* [*The Numerical Bible* by F. W. Grant]. The Lord Jesus made a promise to the criminal on the cross that he would be with Him in *paradise* on that very same day of His physical death (Lk. 23:43). It is vital to note that He did not say *heaven* which is a different Greek word than the Greek word for *paradise* (2 Cor 12: 2, 4). Thus, the criminal on the cross joined His Savior in the paradise side of Hades [sheol] that afternoon. This is why after the Lord Jesus had physically arose from the dead, He said to Mary Magdalene who was clinging to His feet and legs (Mt. 28:1-10), “Do not detain me now; **I am not yet ascended** to my Father . . .” (Jn. 20:11-17; Eph. 4:8-10). Thus, all those who choose to reject the biblical teaching of *hades/sheol* [hell] have a problem. They need to explain where the spirit of the Lord Jesus was from 3 p.m. Friday to 7 a.m. Sunday prior to His bodily resurrection from the dead!

Those who proclaim that the Lord Jesus gave up His spirit at 3 p.m. on the Wednesday prior to the Sabbath day have not considered that His body would have seen corruption [decay] after eighty-eight hours, the same as the body of Lazarus (Jn. 11:17, 39) after a similar amount of time in the grave. This is also true for those who are convinced that the Lord Jesus gave up His spirit at 3 p.m. Thursday and arose at 7 a.m. on Sunday morning for a total of sixty-four hours in the grave. In either case, the body of the Lord Jesus Christ would have seen corruption [decay]. Neither of these two beliefs may be true, since they would both be in conflict with Psalm 16:10 where we are told by David, writing as a prophet of God, that the Holy One of God, the Messiah [the anointed One], would NOT see bodily corruption [decay].

Let us also keep in mind that the *Olivet Discourse* of the Lord Jesus Christ was given by Him to His four disciples on the *Tuesday* afternoon of *Crucifixion Week* (Mt. 24:3-26:2; Mk. 13:3-37; Lk. 21:7-36). Of this there is no doubt! Also, He ended His discourse with the words, “Ye know that **after two days** is *the feast of the passover*, and the Son of man is betrayed to be crucified” (Mt. 26:2). Therefore, He could only be referring to Friday since it is the third day *after Tuesday*.

The week in which the crucifixion of the Lord Jesus took place is possibly the most extraordinary week since the seven days described in Genesis when God divided, brought forth, and created all that we see, smell, touch, taste, hear, and know (Gen. 1:2-2:2). What took place during the *crucifixion week* of the Lord Jesus ran the gamut of emotions, experiences, and things

unexplainable by way of the natural laws of science. This week that began with the Lord Jesus being cheered and receiving cries of hosannas from the people of Jerusalem and ending with His being crucified and in a burial tomb was followed by the greatest supernatural event since God created the heavens and the earth (Gen. 1:1). This event being the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ from the dead to begin the new week and a new age [dispensation] of *grace*.

The bodily resurrection from the dead by the Lord Jesus explains how a group of frightened men could be willing to face persecution, adversity, and death with a song upon their lips. As has been noted, if the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus had not been confirmed numerous times by His followers and non-followers alike, then the reported sightings of the Lord Jesus would have been treated as a joke, like the *Elvis Sightings* after the death of Elvis Presley (Mt. 28:8-10, 16-20; Mk. 16:9-20; Lk. 24:13-53; Jn. 20:11-29; 21:1-25; Acts 1:3-10; 1 Cor. 15:5-8).

Since His resurrection from the dead, many have endeavored to disprove the event and the story of the empty tomb of the Lord Jesus as recorded in the Holy Bible. Needless to say, all have failed in their attempts to do so. Many books have been written on this subject for those who care to study the subject in depth. The truth of the matter is that the Lord Jesus is alive and well and will soon return to snatch out of the world [the Rapture] (Jn. 14:1-3; 1 Cor. 15:51-54; 1 Th. 4:13-18; Ti. 2:13) all who trust Him as their personal Savior by faith alone (Gal. 2:16; Eph. 2:8-9) and in nothing [none] else (Jn. 14:6; Acts 4:12). As has been repeatedly said, this *exclusive* assembly of believers is known as His **bride** (2 Cor. 11:2; Rev. 19:7-9), His **body** (Rom. 12:5; 1 Cor. 12:12-14; Eph. 1:22-23), and His **Church** (Acts 2:47; 20:28).

After the Rapture, the Lord Jesus will judge a Christ-rejecting world in general and a Christ-rejecting Israel specifically. This judgment of His will take place during the seven years [2,520 days] (Dan. 9:27) that precede His Second Coming [2nd Advent] to planet Earth. These years will be the most miserable and horrific ever witnessed on the earth. Thus, mankind [humanity] will have nothing in the past with which to compare these years (Dan. 12:1; Zech. 12:2-9; 14; Mt. 24:21; Mk. 13:19; Rev. 6-19).

As I have stated, the holy Scriptures repeatedly reveal that God has always told mankind [humanity] in advance: **What** He would do, **Why** He would do so, and **When** He would act. Another confirmed pattern of God is His way of giving a *warning* of His coming judgment, with a *sign* to authenticate His warning, followed by His *judgment*. From Adam to Noah to Moses and all of the prophets afterward, God's pattern of doing so is always the same.

Thus, all of mankind [humanity] is in one of two eternal groups. As a **believer** = connection [life] with God in Heaven, or as an **unbeliever** = separation [death] from God in the *lake of fire* (Jn. 3:14-15; 11:25-26; Rev. 20:4-6, 11-15). In which group are you, the reader of this treatise?

# A Biblical View of the Present

There is a strong possibility that presidential elections in the *United States of America* will soon cease to be. The reason being that the *Judeo-Christian* principles that the USA was founded upon have been discarded by the majority of its political leaders and its citizens because of them being both historically and biblically ignorant. It seems that the majority of Americans have abandoned the God of the Holy Bible and this will cause God to abandon the USA in the near future. Truthfully, it appears that God has already begun His judgment by way of changing weather patterns, with an unstable economy, pestilences, and corrupt political leadership.

Vladimir Lenin was the leader of the *Russian Social Democratic* party and the mastermind behind what is known as the *Bolshevik Revolution* in Russia on November 1917. He was also an atheist with a problem. He knew it was impossible for anyone to think of something that did not already exist. This caused him to ask the following question: “If a supernatural being called *God* did not exist, how did the concept of God come to be?” Lenin was never able to answer this question and, illogically, died an atheist. Thus, he chose not to *believe* what he knew to be true!

What began as a *theory* in the 19th century has become the national religion of the USA. The title of this religion is *evolution* whose teachings are based upon the illogical and irrational belief that out of nothing came something. The proponents of the teachings of evolution have decided to ignore the simple and basic mathematical fact that *nothing plus nothing equals nothing*. Thus, like Lenin, they choose not to believe what they know is true! The teachings of evolution must be believed by blind faith since there are no eye witnesses to the initial event and it is impossible to create something from nothing in a laboratory making the belief in evolution a type of religion. The same is true for those who believe in the religion of atheism. These beliefs are based upon pure speculation. It should also be noted that the proponents of evolution and atheism seldom address how the IMMATERIAL might have evolved, such as: **1.** thought, and **2.** memory and **3.** conscious (Ps. 14:1; 53:1).

Abortion, homosexuality, gambling, pornography, and godlessness is now sanctioned by the congress and courts of the USA. Thus, it is now illegal to bring a copy of the Holy Bible into a classroom and to discuss the subject of creation, but it is legal to pass out condoms and burn the American flag. The United States of America was founded as a *republic*, which made it a *nation ruled by law*. The majority of its citizens and politicians now think that the USA is a *democracy* meaning, “ruled by the majority.” The fact that throughout human history, democracies have proven to have a very short life span is unknown to most! The reason why democracies have a very short life span is because the political leadership of a democracy will *always* pander to special interest groups with outrageous promises to obtain their support and votes.

History also records that any nation that has tolerated the practice of sacrificing children to its man-made gods has always been severely judged by the God of the *Holy Bible*. A study of nations and cultures that once thrived and then disappeared will reveal they all offered their children as a sacrifice to the man-made gods of their day. Since 1973, anywhere from fifty to seventy million babies have been legally murdered throughout the USA! Their little bodies were sacrificed to the modern-day idols of money, hedonism, and convenience, while being killed in the womb of their mothers (Ps. 96:5). The God of the Holy Bible will judge the USA for this great sin, the same as He has judged Israel and other great nations in the past for doing the very same thing (Lev. 18:21; Dt. 13:31; 18:9-14; Jer. 19:4-5, 8, 15).

Homosexuality and transgenderism is now accepted as an alternative life-style in the USA and is taught in schools, while being protected by “hate speech” and “hate crime” laws. These laws make it difficult to speak against sexual acts or relationships that have always been thought to be perverted until recent years. Thus, the term *queer* came to be used for this type of behavior in the middle ages. Those who speak out against *sodomy* are now accused of being “homophobic.” The word *phobia* is defined as having an “illogical fear” of something. This type of logic would declare me to be a *doorphobic*, if I insisted a door that says “enter” and a door that says “exit” are only to be used in the way designated. Those involved in homosexuality, whether male or female, have always been severely judged by the God of the Holy Bible since their sexual behavior is an *abomination* to Him (Gen. 18:16-19:29; Lev. 18:22-30; 20:13; Rom. 1:26-28, 31-32; 1 Cor. 6:9; 2 Pet. 2:4-14).

The God of the Holy Bible has been removed from the classrooms, courtrooms, and boardrooms throughout the USA. Therefore, the USA will soon be severely judged by the God of the Holy Bible in the same way as Israel and other nations were for doing the very same things (Dt. 28). This is why the USA cannot be found in Bible prophecy. She will have been reduced to rubble and not be a nation of influence before the 2,520 days that precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] to planet Earth by the Lord Jesus Christ even begins!

Approximately, one-third of the Holy Scriptures were prophetic when they were written by men inspired by *God, the Holy Spirit*, who is the third personality of the triune *Godhead* of the Holy Bible. A large percentage of these prophecies have been fulfilled and many have yet to be. The most controversial and mis-taught and unappreciated of all biblical prophecies is the one now known as the *Rapture*! The reasons for this are teachings based upon false assumptions and ignorance about: **1.** the seven holy feasts of the LORD (Lev. 23). **2.** the three stages of a Jewish marriage. **3.** the ‘Olivet Discourse.’ The English word *Rapture* is not a biblical word! The apostle Paul in his first letter to the church at Thessalonica used the Greek word *harpazo* which means “to snatch away” or “to catch up” when describing this return of the Lord Jesus *for* His own (Jn. 14:1-3; 1 Cor. 15:51-53; 1 Th. 4:13-18). The Latin word *rapare* was translated from the Greek word *harpazo* for the *Latin Vulgate Bible* and it also means “to snatch out” or “to take away.” Thus, the Latin word *rapare* led to the use of the English word *Rapture*, meaning “an expression or manifestation of ecstasy or passion” among those snatched up by the Lord Jesus Christ.

The holy Scriptures tell of two future appearances by the Lord Jesus Christ (Lk. 17:22). The first appearance is now known as the Rapture, where He is like a bridegroom returning for His bride or like a “thief in the night” (Mt. 24:37-44; 25:1-13; Mk. 13:33-37; Lk. 12:35-48, 56; 13:25; 17:26-30, 34-36; 18:8; 21:34-36; Jn. 14:1-3; 1 Cor. 15:51-55; 2 Cor. 11:2; 1 Th. 1:10; 4:13-18; 5:2-6; 2 Th. 2:1-3, 6-7; 2 Tim. 4:8; Ti. 2:13; 2 Pet. 3:3-4; 1 Jn. 2:28; 3:2-3; Jude 18; Rev. 3:10-11; 16:15; 22:7, 12, 20). Those who are “left behind” are either non-Christians or *professing* Christians who had never been truly born-again [born-from-above]. Thus, they were not known to the Lord Jesus Christ (Mt. 7:21-23; 25:12; Lk. 13:25-27; Jn. 3:5-8).

In his first letter to the church in the city of Thessalonica, the apostle Paul told of a generation of Christians [believers] who would not experience physical death (1 Th. 4:14-17). Paul also comforted this assembly of believers [church] in his second letter to them, with this truth, which was told of by “the word of the Lord” (1 Th. 4:15). The reason Paul wrote his second letter to the Thessalonians was to reassure them that they had not missed the coming of the Lord Jesus and the assembling to “meet Him in the air,” (1 Th. 4:17; 2 Th. 2:1) regardless of what they had been told or had heard (2 Th. 2:2).

In his first letter to the church in the city of Corinth, the apostle Paul expanded upon this return of the Lord Jesus for the assembly of people called His **bride** (2 Cor. 11:2; Rev. 19:7-9), His **body** (Rom. 12:5; 1 Cor. 12:12-14; Eph. 1:22-23), and His **Church** (Acts 2:47; 20:28) by telling of a *mystery* that he was going to reveal to them (1 Cor. 15:51-53). It is commonly taught that the English word *mystery*, when used in the holy Scriptures, is a teaching [doctrine] not previously revealed or known. This cannot be true since Paul is using this word AFTER he first taught about the Rapture in his two letters to the church in the city of Thessalonica.

The English word, *mystery*, is translated from the Greek word *musterion*, which was often used by secret Greek fraternities in ancient Greece. When used, it meant, “something that wasn't known by the people at large but only to those initiated into the fraternity; or the subject under discussion was something that was known only to the initiated of the fraternity” [*Young's Analytical Concordance to the Bible*]. Thus, the Rapture is a teaching of which the apostles, being members of the fraternity of Christ, were well aware!

In his letter to the Corinthians (1 Cor. 15:51-53), the apostle Paul is now revealing this teaching of the Rapture [snatched up] to both the universal church and the world-at-large. Those who are snatched up by the Lord Jesus at the Rapture will be taken up to Heaven to face “the judgment seat of Christ” (2 Cor. 5:10). This is not a judgment for sin (Heb. 10:12, 14, 17), but for the works they did or did not do *after* they had become a Christian (Mt. 12:36; Rom. 14:10-12; Gal. 6:7; Eph. 6:8; Col. 3:23-25). These people will then be rewarded accordingly by the Lord Jesus (1 Cor. 3:8, 13-15; 2 Tim. 4:7-8; Rev. 2:10; 22:12). It is after they have received their earned rewards when “the marriage supper of the Lamb” [the Lord Jesus Christ] will be celebrated in Heaven (Rev. 19:7-9).

The place where Christians will live in Heaven will be a city that God has been preparing for them (Heb. 11:16). It is the city that the Jewish patriarch named Abraham looked forward to seeing (Heb. 11:8-10) and why Christians have been described as being strangers and pilgrims while living on planet Earth (Heb. 11:13). They knew their true citizenship was in Heaven (Phil. 3:20), and they would dwell in this city whose beauty and size will be a wonder to behold (Rev. 21:2, 10-23; 22:1-5). The citizens of this city will be the people who have done the will of *God, the Father*, during their life on earth, in whichever of the five *ages* of mankind they lived (Mt. 7:21; 1 Cor. 15:1-4; Eph. 2:8-9; Rev. 21:24-27). The Lord Jesus Christ has promised to come **for** His own and to take them to this city in Heaven (Jn. 14:1-3). He will keep this promise with the Rapture. At His Second Coming [2nd Advent] to planet Earth, the Lord Jesus Christ will return **with** His saints (Rev. 19:11-14) and His angels (Mt. 25:31).

As has been previously noted, the belief and teachings that no one may know when the Rapture or the Second Coming [2nd Advent] will take place have to be false since they conflict with the clear declarations of the Lord Jesus that He had foretold ALL things, and ALL would be revealed, and ALL would be known (Mt. 10:26; Mk. 4:22; 13:23; Lk. 8:17; 12:2; Jn. 18:20). **The definition for the word *all* is 1: the whole number, quantity, or amount: TOTALITY.** Also, God has always told in advance WHAT He was going to do, and WHY He was going to do so, and WHEN He would (Isa. 46:10; 48:16). Thus, God is a *date-setter*. God also has another pattern that must be considered. It is His way of giving WARNINGS of His coming JUDGMENT, and then to authenticate His warnings with a SIGN, prior to executing His judgment. Thus, the pattern being: *warning, sign, judgment*. There are many examples of this teaching being true with my favorites involving Noah, Lot, and the Lord Jesus Himself.

The people of Noah's day were warned by him for 120 years of the coming worldwide judgment of God (Gen. 6:3, 17). The sign that *authenticated* Noah's warning was the arrival of the animals who boarded the ark (Gen. 6:18-20). Both the warning and the sign were ignored by all of mankind except for Noah's family. Thus, all who died in the flood did so because they rejected God's offer of salvation by way of the Ark (Gen. 7:17-23). The penalty for ignoring the warnings and signs from God is always death [separation].

The average height of men and women prior to the flood of Noah probably ranged between 14 to 20 feet (Gen.6:4). The huge size of people, animals, and plant life on the earth prior to the flood of Noah was the effect of the hyperbaric oxygen whose pressure or specific gravity is greater than that in the body tissues or fluid. The physical benefits may be viewed by those who now use a *hyperbaric chamber* in their home or in clinics for health reasons. This was demonstrated when 18-month-old Jessica McClure fell 22 feet into an uncapped, eight-inch diameter well in her aunt's backyard on Wednesday, October 14, 1987 in Midland, Texas. She became known as "Baby Jessica." She remained trapped for 58 hours before being rescued. It was only the availability and use of a hyperbaric chamber in the training room of the Dallas Cowboys football team that prevented the amputation of both her legs which were turning black due to a lack of oxygen from her time in the well.

*Hyperbaric Oxygen* is oxygen whose pressure or specific gravity is greater than that in the body tissues or fluid. The injury process initiated by sluggish blood flow in baby Jessica's legs was reversed by hyper-oxygenation of the blood, which restores tissue oxygenation. Hyperbaric oxygen also helps reduce edema [tissue swelling] and multiple problem wounds and treatments that are told by the *Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society* in Bethesda, MD.

Another false teaching is that the giants who populated the earth prior to the flood of Noah were the offspring of fallen angels [demons] and the daughters of men (Gen. 6:1-2; 4). This cannot be true, because fallen angels [demons] cannot be called *sons of God* (Heb. 1:5; Rom. 8:14-21) and angels [demons] are neuter gender, spirit beings, unable to produce sperm to impregnate a woman (Mt. 22:23-30). Thus, the "sons of God" must refer to men from the godly line of Seth and the women they married were of the ungodly line of Cain (Gen.4:1-26; Jude 11).

Lot and his family were warned by two angels posing as men that as soon as they vacated the premises of the city of Sodom, the LORD [self-existent One] was going to destroy the city for the many sins performed there including homosexuality and sodomy (Gen. 18:20-21; 19:1-3, 12-13). This warning of the LORD's impending judgment was *authenticated* by the sign of simultaneously blinding all the homosexual men (Gen. 19:4-11), whose intent was to rape the two men [angels] who had been sent to warn of Sodom's coming judgment. If Lot's married daughters totaled three (Gen. 19:14), they and their husbands along with Lot, his wife and two virgin daughters would have totaled the ten people (Gen. 18:32-33) required to save Sodom and the other four cities on the plain (Gen. 19:24-29) from being destroyed by simply leaving Sodom as instructed. Instead, Lot's married daughters and their husbands foolishly ignored both the warning and the given sign and perished in the LORD's judgment upon the city of Sodom.

In the year 30 A.D., the Lord Jesus Christ warned His generation of a coming judgment of God (Mt. 23:13-36; Lk. 11:50-51) that would include the destruction of both the holy Temple and the city of Jerusalem (Lk. 21:5-6; Mk. 13:1-2; Mt. 24:1-2). Peter, James, John, and Andrew asked Him for the sign that would indicate when it was to happen (Lk. 21:7f) during what is known as the *Olivet Discourse of Christ*. The Lord Jesus answered by saying the sign would be when Jerusalem found itself surrounded by armies (Lk. 21:20-24).

In his book, *The Wars of the Jews*, the Jewish historian, Flavius Josephus, gave his eyewitness account of why and how the destruction of the Temple and the city of Jerusalem took place. It was a war that began in 66 A.D. with a Jewish rebellion against Roman rule that was deliberately provoked by the procurator of Judea. The Jews who had sedition against Rome in mind then persuaded those who officiated in the divine service of the Temple to refuse a gift of sacrifice from all foreigners, including Caesar. The war between the Jews and the Romans began with this act by the Temple priests. (Book 2, Ch. 17)

It was after the Roman garrison in Jerusalem was killed by seditious forces, (Book 2, Ch. 17) that a Roman legion came upon and surrounded Jerusalem in 68 A.D. to end the rebellion. (Book 2

Ch. 19) The Jews who were of the seditious element of Jerusalem were ready to surrender after being besieged, when the Roman commander, inexplicably, decided to retreat. Thus, many Roman soldiers were killed as a result and much equipment lost as the Romans fled from the city of Jerusalem. (Book 2, Ch. 19) It was while this retreat by the Roman army was taking place that those who remembered and believed the warning and the sign given by the Lord Jesus thirty-eight years earlier (Lk. 21:20-24) were able to flee from the city of Jerusalem. (Book 2, Ch. 20) Thus, they escaped the death, destruction, and horror of what was to come upon all those who would be trapped within the walls of Jerusalem two years later.

Judea was up in arms and in turmoil as the Jewish people rebelled against their Roman rulers. To end this rebellion the Roman emperor sent three of his best Roman legions to Palestine under the command of Vespasian. As a result, order was soon reestablished in the region. (Book 4, Ch. 9) It was late in 69 A.D., when Vespasian sailed back to Rome to become her new emperor. His son, Titus, was then given command of the three legions brought from Rome, along with the legion that had suffered a large loss of men and equipment in their retreat from Jerusalem during the early days of the rebellion. (Book 5, Ch. 1) Titus, who would later succeed his father as Roman Emperor, received orders from Rome to destroy the city of Jerusalem. (Book 4, Ch. 11)

While Vespasian had been laying Judea to waste in his effort to end the Jewish rebellion, many acts of atrocity had been suffered by the citizens of Jerusalem from the three seditious Jewish factions fighting among themselves for control of the city. These three factions were also responsible for the destruction of great quantities of corn and other provisions stored within the city. (Book 5, Ch. 1) This is why Josephus wrote, “. . . the sedition destroyed the city, and the Romans destroyed the sedition.” He also wrote, “. . . that we may justly ascribe our misfortunes to our own people, and the just vengeance taken on them to the Romans.” (Book 5, Ch. 6)

In April 70 A.D., a great number of Jews and proselytes from all over Judea and other countries were in Jerusalem. They had come, as was the custom, to celebrate the *Feast of the Passover* and the *Feast of Unleavened Bread*. (Book 5, Ch. 3) It was at this time when Titus came upon Jerusalem and began his siege of the city. Titus set the strongest part of his army by the northwest corner wall of Jerusalem. (Book 5, Ch. 3) After twenty-four days of heavy fighting, Titus had control of the first two walls of the city, with one wall remaining. (Book 5, Ch. 7 & 8)

Many of the Jewish people in Jerusalem wanted to surrender to the Romans surrounding the city who offered them food and safety. But they were prevented from doing so by the seditious factions. (Book 5, Ch. 10) Thus, they retreated into the inner fortified city. This area included the Temple and the tower Antonia, which was like a fortress. It had been built by King Herod the Great and named after his good friend, Mark Antony. (Book 1, Ch. 21 & Book 5, Ch. 5)

It was fear of what the seditious Jews would do to the relatives they would leave behind that kept many of the Jewish people from deserting to the Romans. Others, however, ventured outside the city walls in their quest for food, with many being captured by Roman soldiers. Thus,

five hundred or more Jews were tortured and crucified each day in grotesque positions prior to being killed. The forest of crosses before the walls of Jerusalem grew larger as each day passed. (Book 5, Ch. 11) The famine in the city, “. . . began to extend its progress, and devour the people by whole houses and families.” (Book 5, Ch. 12) It was reported that many of the Jews who did desert to the Romans ate so much that it caused their extremely fragile stomachs to literally burst open. (Book 5, Ch. 13) It was after the Romans captured the tower Antonia when both Josephus and Titus made pleas to the seditious Jews to spare the Temple from being damaged by moving their forces to another location. Their pleas were ignored! (Book 6, Ch. 2)

Josephus wrote, “Now of those that perished by famine in the city the number was prodigious; and the miseries they underwent were unspeakable.” He also wrote, “Moreover their hunger was so intolerable, that it obliged them to chew everything.” It was when Titus heard that a mother had roasted and eaten her own child that he said, “Men ought not to leave such a city upon the habitable earth to be seen by the sun, wherein mothers are thus fed, although such food be fitter for the fathers than for the mothers to eat of, since it is they that continue still in a state of war against us, after they have undergone such miseries as these.” (Book 6, Ch. 3)

Titus had given orders to his soldiers that the holy Temple was to be spared! However, those of the seditious Jews had not the same concern, for they were the first to set fire to it. (Book 6, Ch. 2) When the assault by the Roman soldiers finally reached the inner courts of the Temple grounds the soldiers were out of control. Josephus was to record that one of these soldiers “. . . cast fire on the gate’s hinges in the dark, so that the flames leapt out from the holy house, and Caesar and the generals retired, and no one any longer forbade its burning; and thus was the holy house destroyed, without Caesar’s assent.” (Book 6, Ch. 4)

Titus completed the devastation by ordering that the city be totally demolished. (Book 7, Ch. 1) The destruction of the Temple by fire caused the vast amounts of gold and silver that had graced the walls to melt between its building blocks. Thus, it was necessary for the Roman troops and their Jewish captives to totally dismantle the Temple, block by block, to gather all of the melted gold and silver. This act fulfilled not only the prophecies of the Lord Jesus Christ in 30 A.D., but also those of Micah and Daniel (Jer. 26:18; Dan. 9:26; Mic. 3:12). The prophecies of these two men regarding the destruction of Jerusalem and the Temple had been given and recorded by them hundreds of years earlier!

Jerusalem had become a city of the dead! According to Josephus, “. . . the number of those that perished during the whole siege . . .” was “. . . 1,100,000 . . .” (Book 6, Ch. 9) “Nor was there any place in the city that had no dead bodies in it, but what was entirely covered with those that were killed, either by the famine, or the rebellion.” (Book 6, Ch. 7) Josephus wrote that Titus, “. . . frequently cursed those that had been the authors of their revolt.” (Book 7, Ch. 5)

The Jews who had survived the siege were dispersed throughout the world as slaves, where they had little value, since their numbers were so great. (Book 6, Ch. 9) This dispersion of the

Jewish people and their small value as slaves among the nations of the world was another fulfillment of Bible prophecy recorded in the *Old Testament* and also from the Lord Jesus Himself (Lev. 26:33, 38-39; Dt. 4:27; 28:63-68; Ps. 44:11-12; Lk. 21:20-24). This is why, while on His way to being crucified, the Lord Jesus said to the women wailing and lamenting for Him, “. . . Daughters of Jerusalem, weep not for me, but weep for yourselves, and for your children. For, behold, the days are coming, in which they shall say, Blessed *are* the barren, and the wombs that never bore, and the [breasts which never nursed]. Then shall they begin to say to the mountains, Fall on us; and to the hills, Cover us. For if they do these things in a green tree, what shall be done in the dry?” (Lk. 23:27-31)

Based upon these two discernible patterns of God that are clearly revealed in each of these three particular biblical events of history, I believe God fully expects the universal church to KNOW when the Rapture will take place (Mt. 25:6-7; Lk. 12:35-40; 1 Th. 4:13-5:6; Heb. 10:25; Ti. 2:13; 1 Jn. 2:28; 3:2-3) and when the Second Coming [2nd Advent] will be fulfilled (Mt. 16:1-3). To believe otherwise, one must deny that God is a date-setter and not believe that the Lord Jesus truly foretold “ALL” things and that not ALL things shall be revealed and that not ALL things shall be known (Mt. 10:26; Mk. 4:22; 13:23; Lk. 8:17; 12:2; Jn. 18:20).

I say again, that the majority of professing Christians do not believe the day of the Second Coming [2nd Advent] can or will be known. They will often refer to Acts 1:6-7 to support their belief. This is when the Lord Jesus was asked if he would restore the kingdom to Israel at that time. He replied, “It is not for **YOU** to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power.” [*Caps added for emphasis.*] The **YOU** was specifically directed to those who had asked this question and was true for them in 30 A.D. It was not to be true for those who could simply count forward 2,520 days (Rev. 11:3; 12:6) from the day a seven-year *defense treaty* (Dan. 9:27a) is signed between Israel and the leader of the European Union [EU] or to count 1,260 days (Rev. 6:11) forward from when the EU leader would break this treaty (Dan. 9:27b) to know the day of His Second Coming [2nd Advent].

Another truth that most Christians are not aware of is that the *Church* was only to look forward to the Rapture and NEVER to the Second Coming [2nd Advent]! This is why references to the return or coming or appearance of the Lord Jesus Christ in the *New Testament* are usually about the Rapture (Rom. 8:22-25; 1 Cor. 1:7; 15:22-23, 51-53; Phil. 1:6, 10; 2:16; 3:20-21; Col. 3:4; 1 Th. 1:10; 2:19; 3:13; 4:13-17; 5:2-6; 2 Th. 2:1-3, 7; 3:5; 1 Tim. 6:14; 2 Tim. 4:8; Ti. 2:13; Heb. 9:28; 10:25; Jas. 5:7-9; 1 Pet. 1:7, 13; 2:12; 4:7, 13; 5:4; 2 Pet. 3:3-4; 1 Jn. 2:28; 3:2-3; Jude 17-19; Rev. 2:25; 3:3, 10; 16:15; 22:7, 12, 20).

The doctrine of the Rapture became one of the casualties of the *Allegorical Method of Interpretation* that was first taught by a man named Origen and later systematized by another man named Augustine. This bogus method of “biblical interpretation” also led to the doctrine of *replacement theology* that teaches the promises God made to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob and their descendants were transferred to the church. This satanic teaching was believed true for years by

many, including Martin Luther who broke away from the *Roman Catholic Church* during the 16th Century and was a leader in the “Protestant [*under protest*] Reformation.” As a result of believing the teaching of replacement theology, Martin Luther was extremely anti-Semitic in many of his writings. Thus, Adolph Hitler used Martin Luther’s writings to justify his attempt to exterminate the Jewish people during World War II.

The doctrine of the Rapture was largely forgotten and unknown to most from about the year 245 A.D., to the middle of the 18th Century, when it was rediscovered by a young man named Morgan Edwards. In the early years of the 19th century a man named John Nelson Darby expanded upon the teaching of the Rapture along with a number of other biblical doctrines like *dispensationalism* and *Bible prophecy* and the *priesthood* of every Christian believer. Darby’s teachings to mainline Christian groups and to other theologians were initially greeted with great resistance and ridicule and accusations of being heretical teachings. As with the Rapture, these doctrines were also unknown to most theologians and church members in the 19th century. This is why references and predictions regarding the return of the Lord Jesus had always been about His Second Coming [2nd Advent]. They were NEVER about the Rapture. John Nelson Darby endured much personal abuse and ridicule from his fellow Christians and theologians and was often accused of heresy before his teachings were biblically validated and accepted by them!

The blessed event (Ti. 2:13) now known as the Rapture will remove from the earth all true believers in the Lord Jesus Christ in the “twinkling of an eye” (1 Cor. 15:52). They will be taken [disappear] because of their faith in Him as their personal Savior and nothing else. Therefore, they are not subject to the coming judgment of God upon a Christ-rejecting world in general and a Christ-rejecting Israel in particular. The Rapture will also be the sign that will *authenticate* the warnings of the coming twenty-one judgments of God upon the world prior to the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus to planet Earth (Dan. 12:1; Mt. 24:21; Rev. 3:10). These twenty-one judgments of God are fully described in the book of *Revelation* as the seven *seal* judgments (Rev. 6:1-17; 7:8:1), the seven *trumpet* judgments (Rev. 8:2-9:21; 11:15-19), and the seven *bowl* judgments (Rev. 16:1-21). They fully affirm what the Lord Jesus said of the days prior to His return to planet Earth at His Second Coming [2nd Advent]. “For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be” (Mt. 24:21) and “Men’s hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth; for the powers of heaven shall be shaken” (Lk. 21:26).

The two most well-known Bible verses, by both believers and nonbelievers alike, seem to be Matthew 24:36 and Mark 13:32-33. These are the Scripture verses from which all will quote to support their belief and teaching that no one may know the day or the hour when either the Rapture or the Second Coming [2nd Advent] will take place. These verses are part of what the Lord Jesus answered when asked, “And what *shall be* the sign when all these things shall be fulfilled?” (Mt. 24:3f) The *all these things* included what He had described would take place prior to and including His Second Coming [2nd Advent] to earth (Mt. 24:4b-35; Mk. 13:5b-31; Lk. 21:8b-33). A composite of His response was, “But of that day and (Mt.24:36a; Mk. 13:32a)

*that* (Mk. 13:32b) hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels (Mt. 24:36b; Mk. 13:32c) of heaven (Mt. 24:36c), who are in heaven, neither the son (Mk. 13:32d), but (Mt. 24:36d; Mk. 13:32e) the Father (Mk. 13:32f), my Father only (Mt. 24:36e). Take heed, watch and pray; for ye know not when the time is” (Mk. 13:33). This composite of His answer to the fourth question asked of Him by Peter, James, John, and Andrew is part of what is now known as the *Olivet Discourse of Christ*, portions of which are recorded in the three synoptic [historical] gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke (Mt. 24:3-26:2; Mk. 13:3-37; Lk. 21:7-36). I do not mean to repeat myself but it seems necessary to do so to explain away many years of false teachings regarding the Rapture.

What I have always found so amazing, through the years, is how Bible teachers and scholars and theologians whose position regarding the Rapture is that the Lord Jesus NEVER taught about it or even alluded to it will then quote these two passages to prove their point that we cannot know when the Rapture will take place. My question to them is this: If the Lord Jesus never taught or even alluded to the Rapture, how can you then quote something He said to refute when someone like myself says that we can? Think! Think! Think!

As we have learned, in the *espousal* stage of a Jewish marriage, no one but the father of the bridegroom knew when he would send his son to retrieve his bride. Thus, the Lord Jesus did not know when He would return for His bride [the church] (Jn. 14:1-3) when He was asked this question three days before His crucifixion (Mt. 26:1-2). However, just as the Jewish bride, who loved her bridegroom, would begin to count the days at the start of their espousal stage (Mt. 1:18; Lk. 1:26-27), the “bride of Christ” is expected to do the same.

**The first man to never die physically was Enoch, who lived for 365 years before being “snatched out” [Rapture] of the earth by God (Gen. 5:22-24; Heb. 11:5-6.) The second man who never physically died by being “snatched out” was the prophet Elijah (2 Ki. 2:1-11). Elijah and his successor, Elisha, along with the sons of the prophets in the cities of Bethel and Jericho all knew the day when Elijah would be taken away [snatched out] by God. Thus, at least fifty-two men knew the day when Elijah would be taken by God. The same will be true prior to the *snatching out* of all those who are members of the group of believers known, in the Holy Bible, as the Church/Body/Bride of the Lord Jesus Christ.**

The Scriptures are clear that the day of the Rapture would be known (Heb. 10:25). This is why the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the city of Thessalonica, after telling them of the Rapture (1 Th. 4:13-18), “But of the times and the seasons, brethren, ye have no need that I write unto you. For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night. For when they shall say, Peace and safety, then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child, and they shall not escape. **But ye, brethren, are not in darkness, that that day should overtake you as a thief.** Ye are all [sons] of light, and [sons] of the day; we are not of the night, nor of darkness. Therefore, let us not sleep, as *do* others, but let us watch and be [sober-minded]” (1 Th. 5:1-6). Watch for what? The Rapture, of course!

Through the years, many Bible teachers and theologians have applied the *Parable of the Ten Virgins* (Mt. 25:1-13) to the nation of Israel and the Jewish people. Thus, they teach that the *virgins* in this parable represent “saved” and “unsaved” Jews. The reason why this cannot possibly be true is that the nation of Israel and her people have NEVER been identified, symbolically, in the Scriptures as virgins! Israel is described as the *unfaithful and adulterous wife* of Jehovah (Isa. 54:5; Jer. 3:20; Hos. 2:2, 7, 16-23). The Church, in contrast, is referred to as a “virgin espoused to Christ” (2 Cor. 11:2).

The *Parable of the Ten Virgins* is part of the answer given by the Lord Jesus to the fourth question asked of Him by His four disciples in what is now known as His *Olivet Discourse*. The question being “And what *shall be* the sign when all these things shall be fulfilled?” (Mk. 13:4b) His answer to this question was that the Rapture will be the sign His disciples asked to know!

As I have previously explained, it is impossible to understand any parable in the Holy Bible and the spiritual truths being illustrated by its use unless it is known who and what the components in the parable biblically represent! In the *Parable of the Ten Virgins* it is also necessary to know what the fundamental thought is for each of the numbers used in its telling.

In his classic seven-volume commentary entitled, *The Numerical Bible*, that was most recently published by Loizeaux Brothers, Inc., in 1974, Mr. F. W. Grant declared the following: “In each number there is . . . a central thought, derived from some natural significance, and from which all other meanings take their rise.”<sup>1</sup> This should not surprise anyone “. . . when . . . ” to again quote Mr. Grant, “. . . you remember how all the natural sciences in the present day are ranging themselves under arithmetical law; when, as Herschel says, every law of nature tends to express itself in terms of arithmetic . . . .”<sup>2</sup> Why should not a law of numbers pervade Scripture also, and link God’s work and His Word together,—or show His Word also to be His work?<sup>3</sup> We must now look, though briefly, at the symbolical meaning of the numbers themselves . . . .<sup>4</sup> As there are seven notes in music, and the eighth is but the octave—the beginning again of the series in another key, so there are seven numerals which are alone fundamental in Scripture—symbolism . . . All other significant numbers derive their meaning from these, which combine in some way to produce them.”<sup>5</sup>

To be concise, only the **fundamental thought** for these numbers in Scripture are given:

1. Exclusiveness
2. Difference or Division
3. Fullness or Completeness
4. Weakness
5. Whole Responsibility under God
6. Manifestation of Evil
7. Perfection
8. New Beginning
10. Natural Responsibility to God

## 12. Manifest Sovereignty

### 40. Full Testing according to the Whole Responsibility

These fundamental thoughts for the numbers used in the Holy Bible explains why the Lord Jesus used the numbers ten and five in the *Parable of the Ten Virgins*. The virgins, because of their numbers, represent individuals, each of whom is wholly *responsible* both naturally and spiritually to God. The fact that two groups of people are described in this parable also reveals that they are different from each other and, therefore, divided from each other.

The ten virgins, in this parable, represent two groups of people who are unaware of the soon return of the bridegroom [the Lord Jesus] for His bride [church]. This is why they are all sleeping, which the apostle Paul said the church was *not* to be found doing (1 Th. 5:1-7). The wise virgins are *true* [saved] believers whose light from their lamps, a symbol of the holy Scriptures (Ps. 119:105, 130; Prov. 6:23), is from the *oil* it contained. Oil is one of the seven symbols of the Holy Spirit (1 Sam. 16:13). The foolish virgins are “professing” [unsaved] believers (Mt. 13:24-30, 36-40) whose lamplight is from its *wick*, which is symbolic of their false religious beliefs and works (Isa. 1:28-31) and is extremely inflammable (Jud 16:9) and shall be put out (Prov. 13:9; 24:20). Thus, after the Rapture, these professing [unsaved] believers are left behind and told by the bridegroom [the Lord Jesus Christ], “*I know you not*” (Mt. 25:13).

There are seven representations or types used in the Scriptures to signify the Person of *God, the Holy Spirit*. They are: **1. Abraham’s Servant** (Gen. 24:1-67), **2. Oil** (1 Sam. 16:13), **3. Dove** (Mt. 3:16), **4. Wind** (Jn. 3:3-8), **5. Water** (Jn. 7:37-39), **6. Fire** (Acts 2:3-4), and **7. Wine** (Eph. 5:18).

This information about *God, the Holy Spirit*, is given to show that the five foolish virgins of the *Parable of the Ten Virgins* are not true Christians. They are *professing* Christians and identified as such by being called *foolish* and having no oil [the Holy Spirit] in their lamps (Mt. 25:3)! The wise virgins, in contrast, are true Christians since they are described as wise, and they had oil [the Holy Spirit] in their lamps when they went out to meet the bridegroom [Christ].

“While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept” (Mt. 25:5). The word *slept*, as used in this parable, means being ‘unaware.’ This why they are described as sleeping!

“And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him. Then all those virgins arose and trimmed their lamps. And the foolish said unto the wise, Give us of your oil; for our lamps are gone out. But the wise answered, saying, *Not so*, lest there be not enough for us and you; but go rather to them that sell, and buy for yourselves. And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came, and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage; and the door was shut” (Mt. 25:6-10).

The true Christian who is solely trusting in the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ for their salvation and justification will ‘wake up’ from their sleep as will *professing* Christians who are trusting in what they have done for their salvation. These professing Christians are people who had been deceived by teachers who taught them *another* gospel (Mt. 7:15-20; 13:24-30, 36-43; Acts 20:29-30; Gal. 1:6-9). The people in these two groups who had not been aware [sleeping] of the nearness of the Rapture will now become aware that it is about to happen!

It is when the foolish virgins [professing] Christians begin to examine what their salvation is based upon [religious works] that their light begins to go out (Mt. 25:7-8). This is why some teach and believe that salvation can be lost since the lamps were once lit but are now going out. Those who teach this **assume** that the foolish virgins [professing Christians] started out with oil [the Holy Spirit], in their lamps, but neglected to bring an additional supply of oil to keep it lit (Mt. 25:3). This false teaching cannot be true, since the salvation offered by the Lord Jesus Christ is binding (Jn. 6:37; 2 Cor. 1:22; Eph. 1:13; 4:30; 1 Jn. 5:13). Also, once God, the Holy Spirit, indwells the new believer, He will remain within them as their life force throughout eternity (Jn. 14:16-17, 26). Thus, salvation is assured, forever!

As we now know, the lamps of the foolish virgins [professing Christians] were not lit by oil [God, the Holy Spirit] but by its wick. The wick is a symbol of their false religious beliefs and works (Isa. 1:28-31). This wick is made from an extremely inflammable material (Jud. 16:9). It isn’t until the wick in their lamps are ‘trimmed’ that the light from their lamps begin to die out. The trimming of their wick must refer to these professing Christians finally doing a serious self-examination upon what their salvation is based (2 Cor. 13:5).

The teachings of every man-made *religion* and of false teachers is that salvation consists of faith plus works. The works might be as simple as being *baptized* [sprinkled/dipped/immersed] in water or of having an “experience”, or from joining a church or “denomination.” The works might also include making “Jesus Lord of your life,” or “repenting of your sins.” They could be something impossible to do like never “sinning again.” No matter what the works may be, you must *do* something for your salvation to be genuine. The *fundamental* teachings of biblical Christianity, on the other hand, have always been that salvation is by the grace of God, based on faith in the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ alone. Salvation is a gift that must be received in the same manner as any other gift, which is freely (Rom. 4:5; Gal. 2:16; Eph. 2:4-13). Thus, we are to trust **solely** in the finished work of our Savior for our redemption (Jn. 19:30)!

It is not until the charred end of the wick [false religious beliefs] has been disturbed that the lamps of the foolish virgins [professing Christians] begin to go out (Prov. 24:20; Mt. 25:8). This will take place as all true and professing Christians, arise to go and meet the bridegroom [the Lord Jesus Christ] (Mt. 25:7). Aware that their lamps are going out, the foolish virgins [professing Christians] reveal their ignorance of the gift of salvation by asking the wise virgins [true Christians] for some of their oil [the Holy Spirit]. They seem not to know that the individual who has been ‘born-again’ can only tell of how they came to trust the Lord Jesus to be

their personal Savior, by faith alone. It is impossible for the true Christian to give ‘some’ of that moment or to give a ‘piece’ of it to anyone else!

The ignorance shown by the foolish virgins is similar to that of Simon the ‘sorcerer’ who publicly *identified* [baptized] himself with the Lord Jesus by saying he ‘believed’ on Him (Acts 8:9-13). His lie was revealed when he tried to purchase the power of *God, the Holy Spirit* with money (Acts 8:18-19). After Simon the sorcerer did this, the apostle Peter told him that he had neither part nor lot with God, the Holy Spirit (Acts 8:21). Thus, Simon the sorcerer was a professing [unsaved] Christian and not a true born-again (Mt. 18:3; Jn. 3:3-8) [saved] Christian.

The action of Simon the sorcerer showed his ignorance concerning salvation and the gift [indwelling] of God, the Holy Spirit. Peter also told him his heart was not right in the sight of God (Acts 8:21) and to have a change of mind [repent] in regards to his wickedness and to ask God to forgive his evil thoughts (Acts 8:22). After being told that he had a bitter feeling and was in the bond of ‘lawlessness’ (Acts 8:23), Simon the “sorcerer” continued to reveal his unsaved condition. He did this by ignoring Peter’s advice to pray to God for his own forgiveness (Acts 8:22). Rather than pray for himself, Simon the sorcerer asked Peter to pray for him (Acts 8:24).

The wise virgins [true Christians] correctly tell the foolish virgins [professing Christians] that their supply of oil [the Holy Spirit] was not enough for all of them (Mt. 25:9). Their reason for saying so is that the spiritual birth, like the natural birth, is a personal act. It cannot be shared! All those who God, the Holy Spirit, indwells, are trusting [believing] the Lord Jesus Christ to be their personal Savior, by faith alone. It is impossible to give a piece of their belief or salvation to another but they may share how it came to be. Their spiritual rebirth is as unique to them as is their own natural birth. The *professing Christian* must simply ‘renounce’ whatever type of work they have added to the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ for their salvation and simply believe by faith alone that what the Lord Jesus Christ did while on the cross paid in full the penalty due (Rom. 4:5; Eph. 2:8-9) for their sins against a holy God (Jn. 3:5-7).

The wise virgins [true Christians] then advise the foolish virgins [professing Christians] to go to “them that sell oil” and buy some for themselves (Mt. 25:9). This refers to God, the Father, and God, the Son, for it is the *Father* (Jn. 14:16-17, 26) and the *Son* (Jn. 16:7) who send God, the Holy Spirit (Jn. 15:26) so that all might believe and be saved. While the foolish virgins [professing Christians] think about what they had been trusting in for their salvation, and consider to *solely* believe in the Lord Jesus Christ to be their personal Savior, by faith alone, He, as the bridegroom, returns for His bride [the Rapture]. The wise virgins [true Christians] are then taken up by the Lord Jesus Christ to participate in the *marriage feast* prepared for them and the door is closed behind them (Mt. 25:10). “Afterward came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us. But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, I know you not. Watch, therefore; for ye know neither the day nor the hour in which the Son of man cometh” (Mt. 25:11-13).

After the Rapture there will be a plea from the professing Christians who were left behind. They will plead for the Lord Jesus to come back for them (Mt. 25:11). Some will plead their case with Him by pointing out the things [works] they did in His name (Mt. 7:22). Others will remind Him of their observance of the ‘ordinance of communion’ and of hearing His teachings (Lk. 13:26). His response to all of these pleas will be the same, “I never knew you” (Mt. 7:23), “Verily I say unto you, I know you not (Mt. 25:12), and “I know you not from where ye are” (Lk. 13:25, 27). These people were never truly born again [saved] (Jn. 3:5-7). Their reaction to being left behind will be one of weeping and grinding of teeth (Mt. 24:48-51).

It is possible that a great number of people will drown in the floodwaters caused by the tears of those who have been left behind after the Rapture has taken place. The Lord Jesus then concluded the “Parable of the Ten Virgins” with a warning He has given many times before in regards to the day of His return known as the Rapture. We are to watch for it (Mt. 25:13)!

A question I have often asked is, what will it take to *wake-up* the sleeping Church? I do not believe it will be a message of any kind. I believe it will take an *event* like the total destruction of the city of Damascus, Syria, by a nuclear device (Isa. 17:1) which might wake up both groups from their sleep. These unaware believers and professing believers will then wake up, rise up and go to meet the bridegroom. Thus, it does not seem likely that many will be quoting Matthew 24:36 or Mark 13:32 just prior to the Rapture. It should be noted that the *wise* virgins [true believers], who are awake and aware of the signs of the times (2 Tim. 2:15), are not included in this parable!

It is the same with the espoused bride of Christ (2 Cor. 11:1-2) as it was for the espoused Jewish bride who loved her husband and began counting the days with their espousal. She did so because she knew his return for her could only be after 360 days had passed, which is a biblical year, and by the 720th day from when it began. As the 720th day drew closer, the Jewish bride could become ever more confident in knowing when her bridegroom would return for her. It should be the same for the Church!

The return of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth is known as the Second Coming [2nd Advent]. This is the return in which He will touch down on the *Mount of Olives* from which He bodily ascended into the heavens in 30 A.D. (Acts 1:9-11). The Lord Jesus will then rule over the entire earth from the city of Jerusalem, with a rod of iron, for one thousand years (Ps. 2:1-12; Isa. 2:10-21; Jer. 23:5-6; Dan. 2:35, 44-45; 7:13-14; Zech. 12:8-11; 14:1-7; Mt. 24:29-30; Mk. 13:24-26; Lk. 21:27; Rev. 19:11-16; 20:1-3). As I have said, the day of His Second Coming [2nd Advent] may be known by simply counting forward 2,520 days from the day the leaders of Israel sign a seven year *defense* treaty (Dan. 9:27) with the leader of the European Union [EU] who will be the infamous antichrist. When this man breaks the treaty at the halfway point, all anyone will have to do is count forward 1,260 days to once again know and confirm when the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ will be. I believe this man will be the Italian politician and leader, Matteo Salvini!

As previously stated, the Second Coming [2nd Advent] is to only be anticipated by those people who become Christians AFTER the Rapture. Peter, James, John, and Andrew became concerned with the return to earth by the Lord Jesus Christ after they were told what they would face during their lifetime for His name's sake. This is what caused them to want to know what to look for to ascertain that His return was near and to ask their third question, recorded in the *Olivet Discourse of Christ*, "What shall be the sign of thy coming" (Mt. 24:3f)? The Lord Jesus answered their question by first describing all that would take place prior to His Second Coming to planet Earth (Mt. 24:4-31; Mk.13:5-8, 10, 12-27; Lk. 21:8-11, 25-28). He then told them the "signs" to look for to know that His return was near, by way of two parables. They are the *Parable of the Fig Tree* and the *Parable of All the Trees* (Mt. 24:32; Mk. 13:28; Lk. 21:29-31).

I would, once again, like to remind the reader of this treatise that a *parable* is a story told to illustrate and bring understanding of truth. With stories of familiar things in the natural or material world, the Lord Jesus was able to teach important *spiritual* truths to the people of His day. Therefore, the two signs which were to indicate that His Second Coming [2nd Advent] was near would be the "rebirth" of the nation of Israel and the "return of her men" to the land of Israel! The reason for saying this is based upon the fact that the *fig tree* is a symbol used in Scripture that refers to the nation of Israel. God, Himself, used figs as a symbol for Israel in a parable recorded in Jeremiah 24:1-2. God then explained, in Jeremiah 24:4-10, that the good figs represent the descendants of Israel whom He would return to the land of their fathers and the bad figs were the descendants of Israel whom He would destroy.

In a parable told by Jotham to the men of Shechem that is recorded in Judges 9:7-15, *trees* were also used to symbolize the men of Israel. The *trees* in this parable were the men of Israel who had gone forth to anoint a king over them, as recorded in Judges 8:22. The disciples knew, as did all Jews, that fig trees would leaf out in late spring, near the beginning of summer (Mt. 24:32; Mk. 13:28). Thus, when they saw the "fig tree begin to bloom" [the nation of Israel reborn], they should know that summer [His Second Coming], is "near at hand" (Lk. 21:29-30). The rebirth of Israel, as a sovereign nation, took place on May 14, 1948 and fulfilled the first sign the Lord Jesus had given. The second sign He gave was fulfilled when Jewish men [trees] returned in great numbers to their ancestral homeland in subsequent years. Thus, all who noticed this happening should know the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ, the Jewish Messiah [the Anointed One], was very near.

The number of Jews of various skin colors and who spoke many different languages that have immigrated to Israel from every nation of the world since her rebirth in 1948 has been both phenomenal and remarkable. The many different languages being spoken by these Jewish immigrants from so many nations made resurrecting the forgotten and ancient language of *Hebrew* a necessity. This is another sign that has been largely ignored by most (Dt. 4:27; 28:63-68; 30:1-5; Jer. 23:3-8; Ezek. 37:21-25; Hos. 3:4-5). Thus, there is no excuse for anyone not knowing that the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus is near, *even at the door* (Mt. 24:33; Mk. 13:29; Lk. 21:31).

All students of history would have to agree that the 20th century had more growth and advancement in human knowledge, science, and technology than any other period of time in the history of mankind. This is a century that began with people riding on horseback and ended with men and women occupying a space station circling our home planet. It is doubtful whether anyone could name all of the products that are now in use and the services being performed on a daily basis, which were totally unknown of 123 years ago. Automobiles replaced horses as the basic form of transportation in the same way pencils and ink pens were replaced by computers. Things like nuclear power and instant verbal and visual communications are now taken for granted along with air travel, recordings and viewing devices with an incredible number of miscellaneous inventions, gadgets, and other things that have all come about during the 20th century. Thus, it would seem impossible to declare what was the single most incredible event that took place in this remarkable period of time. Yet, we can. It was the rebirth of Israel!

The Jewish people had not been a sovereign nation since the defeat of Judah by the king of the Chaldeans when they were taken as captives to Babylon. The land that God had promised to Abraham (Gen. 12:7; 13:14-17), Isaac (Gen. 26:1-5), Jacob (Gen. 28:10-15; 31:3, 13) and their descendants (Gen. 12:1-3; 13:15) and to which He led them upon leaving Egypt (Dt. 1:8) was renamed *Syria Palestina* [Palestine] by the Roman Emperor Hadrian after the *Bar Kokhba* rebellion from 132 to 135 A.D. With the destruction of their Temple and the city of Jerusalem in 70 A.D., the Jewish survivors were dispersed throughout the world as slaves (Dt. 4:27) to endure centuries of misery and repeated relocation. It is a fact of history that the holocaust caused by the Nazi regime of Adolph Hitler in Germany was simply more of what the Jewish people had suffered through many times with their worldwide dispersion as slaves in 70 A.D. It could only be a miracle of God, and a fulfillment of Bible prophecy, that His *Chosen People* were able to survive, and maintain their separate identity as Jews, no matter where they were taken or driven to live on earth!

As is commonly known, the population of Israel is now comprised of Jews from all nations of the world to where they had been dispersed by God because of their disobedience to Him (Lev. 26:32-38; Dt. 4:27; 28:58, 62-68). They have returned to the land of their fathers, in disbelief, the very way God said they would, through His prophets (Dt. 30:1-5; Jer. 16:14-15; 23:3-8; 30:3-4; Ezek. 34:11-16; 36:24-28, 35; 37:4-5, 11-14, 21; Hos. 3:4-5), while speaking many different languages. This *babel* of confusion ended when the ancient language of *Hebrew* was revived in fulfillment of the prophecy recorded in Jeremiah 31:23, "Thus saith the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel, As yet they shall use this speech in the land of Judah and in its cities, when I shall bring again their captivity: The LORD bless thee, O habitation of justice, and mountain of holiness."

In Isaiah 66:8, God asked the question, "Shall a nation be born at once?" In regards to the nation of Israel on the 14th day of May, 1948, the answer was YES, which is why Israel has been described as being the nation that was "born in a day." This is why Israel's rebirth as a sovereign nation after more than 2,500 years, is the greatest and most remarkable event of the 20th century.

Since the day of her rebirth, the little nation of Israel has been forced to fight four wars. She has been victorious, against overwhelming odds in each of them, while continuously suffering from countless terrorist attacks by Islamic forces!

Peter, James, John, and Andrew asked for signs to know when the Lord Jesus would return to earth and the sign to indicate when his return would be near. The Lord Jesus told them what they wanted to know by way of His answers to their questions in His *Olivet Discourse*. We also know that the Lord Jesus repeatedly declared that He had foretold ALL things with statements like: “. . . for there is nothing covered that shall not be revealed; and hidden, that shall not be known” (Mt. 10:26). “For there is nothing hidden, which shall not be manifested; neither was any thing kept secret, but that it should come [to light]” (Mk. 4:22). “But take heed; behold, I have foretold you all things” (Mk. 13:23). “For nothing is secret, that shall not be made manifest; neither *any thing* hidden, that shall not be known and come [to light]” (Lk. 8:17). “For there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; neither hidden, that shall not be known” (Lk. 12:2). “. . . I spoke openly to the world; I ever taught in the synagogue, and in the temple, where the Jews always resort; and in secret have I said nothing” (Jn. 18:20).

Since the Lord Jesus could not lie, the common and accepted teachings that no one may know or will know when either the Rapture or the Second Coming [2nd Advent] will happen must be false! We are now going to examine and consider some of the main arguments to support the position for why God expects mankind to *know* when each of these two events will take place. The LORD [self-existent One] gave the people of Israel “seven holy feast days” that they were to observe each year in *remembrance* of what He had done for them prior to and after their exodus from Egypt (Lev. 23). Few knew then and few know now that each of these feast days were also prophetically significant and were to each be literally fulfilled by the Lord Jesus!

The Lord Jesus **HAS** fulfilled: **1. The Feast of the Passover** with His death (Lev. 17:11; 23:4-5; Dt. 16:1-2, 5-7; Jn. 1:29; 1 Cor. 5:7; 2 Cor. 5:21; Heb. 9:22; 1 Pet. 1:18-19). **2. The Feast of Unleavened Bread** with His burial (Ex. 12:14-20; 23:15; Lev. 23:6-8; Dt. 16:3-4, 8, 16; Jn. 6:35). **3. The Feast of First Fruits** with His bodily resurrection from the dead (Ex. 23:16a; Lev. 23:9-14; Lk. 24:1-7; 1 Cor. 15:20-23a; Col. 1:18). **4. The Feast of Weeks** [Pentecost] with the birth of His church [called out assembly] (Ex. 34:22a; Lev. 23:15-22; Dt. 16:9-12, 16; Acts 2).

The Lord Jesus **WILL** fulfill: **5. The Feast of Trumpets** with the Rapture (Ex. 23:16b; 34:22b; Lev. 23:23-25; Num. 29:1-6; Jn. 4:34-35; 14:2-3; Lk. 17:26-30, 34-36; Mt. 24:36-42; 25:6-10; Mk. 13:32-37; 1 Th. 4:13-18; 5:2; 2 Th. 2:1; 1 Cor. 15:23b, 51-53; Heb. 9:28; Rev. 3:3, 10-11; 22:12-13, 20). **6. The Feast of a Day of Atonement** [Yom Kippur] with His Second Coming [2nd Advent] to planet Earth (Lev. 16; 23:26-32; Num. 29:7-11; Ps. 2:1-12; Zech. 12:10; 13:1; Rom. 11:26-27; Heb. 7:27; 9:11-12, 22; 10:12, 17-18). **7. The Feast of Tabernacles** with His 1,000-year reign on earth from the city of Jerusalem (Lev. 23:33-44; Num. 29:12-40; Dt. 16:13-15; Ezek. 37:26-27; 45:25; Zech. 14:16-19).

The fig tree [Israel] began to bloom with the rebirth of Israel on May 14, 1948. Thus, “summer” [the return of the Lord Jesus Christ] had to be near at hand and the generation that witnessed Israel’s rebirth would not pass away until the Second Coming to earth by the Lord Jesus Christ. Many thought that the duration of this generation would be forty years since that was the number of years that the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for their unbelief and disobedience to God after their exodus from Egypt (Ex. 16:35; Num. 14:33; Dt. 29:5; Acts 7:36-42). Then there was the fact that three days before His crucifixion in 30 AD, the Lord Jesus warned the religious leaders known as scribes and the Pharisees of all they would do and the consequences they would endure for doing them (Mt. 23:13-35). He then concluded His warning with, “Verily I say unto you, All these things shall come upon this generation” (Mt.23:36). In 70 AD, forty years later, all that He said to the scribes and Pharisees was completely fulfilled. It is for this reason many thought the Second Coming would happen in 1988. Another possibility to determine the number of years for this generation was the “Year of the Jubilee” (Lev. 25:8-55; 27:16-24), which is to be celebrated every fifty years to bring relief from all oppression and debt and to reclaim all family property. The passing of 1998 proved it was not a fifty year generation!

**“This generation shall not pass away, till all these things be fulfilled,” declared the Lord Jesus. If the generation that will witness His Second Coming to earth began with the rebirth of the nation of Israel on May 14, 1948, then the duration of this specific generation must be for eighty years (Ps. 90:10). Thus, the Second Coming of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth will be on the *Feast of a Day of Atonement* [Yom Kippur] on September 30, 2028. Those who are left behind after the Rapture has taken place on the third and final harvest feast (Jn. 4:35-38) known as the *Feast of Trumpets* on September 17, 2023, will then have to endure the twenty-one judgments told of in the book of Revelation (Rev. 4:1-19:6).**

The reunification of the city of Jerusalem by Israeli soldiers during the *Six Day War* that began on June 5, 1967 and ended on June 11, 1967 is second only to the rebirth of Israel, in Bible prophesy significance during the 20th century. Jerusalem had been ruled by foreign powers for more than 2,570 years, beginning with the king of Babylon. The meaning of the word *Jerusalem* is “City of Peace.” How ironic for a city that has been totally destroyed 24 to 26 times throughout its history. Jerusalem will only be true to its name with the return of the Lord Jesus Christ, the one and only *Prince of Peace* (Isa. 9:6b).

A composite of what the Lord Jesus said while speaking of the 2,520 days prior to His *Second Coming* [2nd Advent] is recorded in the gospels of Matthew and Mark. It is, “For (Mt. 24:21a; Mk.13:19a) in those days shall be affliction (Mk. 13:19b) then shall be great tribulation (Mt. 24:21b), such as was not since the beginning of the (Mt. 24:21c; Mk. 13:19c) creation (Mk. 13:19d) of the world (Mt. 24:21d) which God created unto this time (Mk. 13:19e), no, nor ever shall be (Mt. 24:21e; Mk. 13:19f). And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved; but for the elect’s sake those days shall be shortened (Mt. 24:22). And except the Lord had shortened those days, no flesh should be saved; but for the elect’s sake, whom he hath chosen, he hath shortened the days” (Mk. 13:20).

Thus, according to the Lord Jesus Christ, the 2,520 days that precede His Second Coming [2nd Advent] will be a terrible time of worldwide misery, which mankind will have nothing to compare. It will be during this time when God will be judging people for rejecting the Lord Jesus Christ as their personal Savior. This nightmarish period of time will end with what is known as the *Battle of Armageddon* (Ps. 2:1-12; Zech. 12:10-11; 14:4-7; Mt. 24:29-30; Mk. 13:24-26; Lk.21:27; Rev. 19:11-21), when the Lord Jesus returns to planet Earth at His Second Coming. This is why the Lord Jesus repeatedly warned His believers to watch and pray for the Rapture so that they might escape this time of trouble and “great tribulation” (Mt. 24:42-51; 25:13; Mk. 13:33-37; Lk. 21:34-36; Rev. 3:10-11).

The Lord Jesus, upon His Second Coming to earth, will fulfill and accomplish three significant events. The first event will be His prophetic fulfillment of the *Feast of a Day of Atonement* [Yom Kippur] like He had fulfilled the previous five holy feasts of the LORD (Lev. 23). The second event will see the end of the *Times of the Gentiles* (Lk. 21:24) that began with the destruction of Jerusalem by the king of Babylon. Jerusalem will never again be ruled or controlled by Gentiles, but only by their Jewish messiah (Jn. 4:9), the Lord Jesus Christ who will rule as King over the earth for the next 1,000 years!

The third event that the Lord Jesus will fulfill with His Second Coming to earth will be the *Year of the Jubilee* that was given by the LORD [self-existent One] to the people of Israel. This unique year was to be observed and celebrated every fifty years by the Jewish people on the *Feast of a Day of Atonement* [Yom Kippur] Lev. 25:8-55; 27:16-25; Num. 36:4-13). This year is also called the “year of liberty” (Lev. 25:10; Ezek. 46:17). The *Jubilee Year* was to be one of “freedom” and “grace” for all who suffered. Thus, it brought not only redemption to the captive and deliverance from want to the poor but also release to the whole congregation of the LORD [self-existent One] from the heavy labors of the land.

The *Year of the Jubilee* also represented a time of refreshing which the LORD [self-existent ONE] would provide for His people. It was in this blessed year when every kind of oppression was to cease and every member of the people of Israel were to find their *Redeemer* in the LORD who brought them back to their possession and family. Thus, all debts would be forgiven and forgotten along with regaining all mortgaged family real estate. In other words, what had been lost during the previous forty-nine years was to be regained in the *Year of the Jubilee*. Prior to the “Year of the Jubilee” was the seventh *sabbath* [shemitah] *year* during this fifty-year generational time frame (Ex. 23:10-11; Lev. 25:1-7). The three names given by Moses to this festival expressed some feature connected with how it was to be observed. They are: **1.** The *Sabbath of Rest* since the land was to have complete rest from cultivating, sowing, pruning, and harvesting every seventh year (Lev. 25:4). **2.** The *Year of Rest* which was to extend throughout the year (Lev. 25:5). **3.** The *LORD’s Release* since all debts are remitted (Dt. 15:1-2, 9-15).

The spirit of the “sabbath year” was to be the same as that of the weekly “sabbath day.” If this command of the LORD would be obeyed by the people of Israel, He would then bless their land in the sixth year of the seven-year sequence with a crop *three* times what could normally be expected. This would be enough to supply their needs through the “year of rest,” plus the next year when a new crop would be planted, and the year after that in the case of the “Jubilee Year” (Lev. 25:20-22). The people of Israel NEVER obeyed this command regarding the “sabbath year” prior to her enslavement to King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon.

It was during their seventy years of captivity in Babylon, where the people of Israel suffered for their disobedience to the LORD [self-existent One], that the land of Israel gained her required rest in consecutive years (2 Chr. 36:21; Jer. 25:8-11; 27:6-8; 29:10; Dan. 9:2). After their captivity had ended in Babylon, a remnant of Jews returned to their land of Israel (Ezra 1:1-3) and thereafter, did observe the “sabbath year.” Their doing so is referred to in the extra-biblical writings of *1 Maccabees* 6:49, 53 and Josephus in his *Book of the Antiquities* [xiii, 8, 1; xiv, 10, 6; xv, 1-2] etc., who affirmed the same for the Samaritans [xi, 8, 6]. Therefore, the *will* of the LORD must and will be done!

The rest which the land was supposed to have in the seventh year has become known as the *shemitah year*. The word, *shemitah*, is most often translated as “release.” There are a number of meanings given in *Webster’s Ninth New Collegiate Dictionary* for the word *release*, all of which have to do with canceling obligations or functions of one kind or another. This sabbath year was given by the LORD to afford the people of Israel a time of true spiritual rest and refreshing with the burden of debt removed. It also allowed a time of relaxation and recreation for laboring men and their animals of burden. The prophetic significance of the *Year of the Jubilee* will be fulfilled with the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth when He will rescue His “chosen” people from the nations (Ps. 110; Hos. 5:15-6:3; Zech. 12:1-14:15; Mt. 23:39; Acts 3:19-21; Rev. 19:11-21). His physical return will end the “Age of Grace” and begin the *Millennial Kingdom Age*. All of the people who enter into the 1,000 year *Kingdom Age* will do so spiritually and financially debt-free (Mic. 7:18-20; Mt. 25:31-34).

During His first seventy-five days on earth (Dan. 12:11-12), the Lord Jesus will judge all of the people who had survived the seven years [2,520 days] on earth preceding His Second Coming [2nd Advent]. The Lord Jesus will do this by separating His “sheep” [believers] from the “goats” [unbelievers] (Mt. 25:31-46). The sheep are those people who came to trust, by faith alone, in His sacrifice being sufficient payment for all of their sins against a holy God. These are those people who will enter into the *Millennial Kingdom Age* and repopulate and rebuild a world in ruins, while Satan will be bound and confined in an abyss for 1,000 years (Rev. 20:1-3, 7).

The goats are those people who would not believe and receive the Lord Jesus Christ as their personal Savior, by faith alone, during the seven years of tribulation preceding His Second Coming to planet Earth. These people will be judged and then cast into the torment section of *Hades* (Mt. 25:41, 46; Lk. 16:19-31) to await the *Great White Throne Judgment* that will take

place 1,040 years in the future. Satan will be bound and confined in an abyss during the *Kingdom Age on earth* and will then be released for a season of forty years. Satan will then lead the last rebellion by mankind against the Lord Jesus Christ during this forty-year season of testing (Rev. 20:1-3, 7-9). The Lord Jesus Christ will then end this rebellion against Him and begin the *Great White Throne Judgement* for all who died in their sins throughout the five *ages* [dispensations] of mankind. It is here where those being judged will then learn that their name, which had been placed in the *Lamb's Book of Life* [connection] upon conception, has been removed. They will then learn that their name has instead been placed in the *Book of Works* because they have relied on their own good works and good life and religion to warrant their personal salvation and in the *Book of Death* [separation]. They will then be found guilty in their sins and cast into the *Lake of Fire* where they will be *forever* separated from the holy presence of God (Rev. 20:11-15).

In the *Lake of Fire*, the ‘unsaved’ [lost] will forever consciously suffer while being totally alone, in absolute darkness and silence, with nothing but the memories of their life while on planet Earth (Isa. 66:24; Jude 12-13) to think upon. The eternal consequences of refusing to believe the God of the Holy Bible and His Holy Word will be a never-ending nightmare of regret and sorrow for all who refused to do the ‘will’ of God during their life on earth (Gen. 2:15-17; Mt. 7:21; 12:50; Mk. 3:35). This will be true of all whether they lived in the: **1. Age of Innocence** [probably a period of 40 years and 40 days] (Gen. 2:7; 3:6), **2. Age of Beginnings** [probably a period of about 2,500 years] (Gen. 3:6; Ex. 19:5-8; 20:1-31:18; Dt. 5:27-28; 29:1-15), **3. Age of Law** [probably about 1,500 years] (Ex. 19:5-8; 20:1-31:18; Dt. 5:27-28; 29:1-15; Mt. 5:17-18; Jn. 19:30; Heb. 9:11-28; **4. Age of Grace** [a period of 1,998 years] (Mt. 5:17-18; Jn. 19:30; Heb. 9:11-28; Zech. 12:8-14:21; Mt. 25:31-46; Rev. 19:11-21), or **5. Age of Messiah's Kingdom** [a period of 1,000 years] (Zech. 12:8-14:21; Mt. 25:31-46; Rev. 19:11-21; Ezek. 20:33-44; Dan. 7:22; 12:11-12; Mal. 3:2-5; 4:1-2; Mt. 25:31-46; Rev. 20:4).

After this last judgment of sin the Lord Jesus Christ will release every atom throughout creation (2 Pet. 3:10-12), which will remove all evidence and traces of sin [rebellion] against God. He will then create new heavens and a new earth without any trace of sin [rebellion] (Isa. 65:17, 22; 2 Pet. 3:13; Rev. 21:1).

F. W. Grant, *The Numerical Bible: Genesis to Deuteronomy* (Loizeaux Brothers, 1974).  
(1)p. 12 (2) p. 10 (3) p. 11 (4) p. 11 (5) p. 12

# A Biblical View of the Future

A synopsis of the coming prophetic events that are recorded in the holy Scriptures will begin our biblical view of the future. These events will take place in the following sequence and a full explanation for each will then be given with the reasons and biblical details for each prophetic event mentioned.

The next Bible prophecy that will be fulfilled is the war described in Psalm 83 and Isaiah 17. This war will be between Israel and the nations who touch her borders. They are Lebanon, Syria, Jordan, and Egypt. These nations will be allied with the fundamentalist Islamic groups known as Hezbollah, Hamas, and Isis (Isa. 17:2-3, 12-14; Jer. 49:23-27). Israel will be victorious in this war that will end with the destruction of the city of Damascus, Syria, by way of a nuclear device (Isa. 17:1). The nation of Israel will then enjoy having a sense of “peace and safety” (1 Th. 2:3a). This will cause the leaders of Israel to remove all of the walls that had been erected to protect their citizens from enemy and terrorist forces. Thus, Israel is called the “land of unwallled villages” (Ezek. 38:11) when Russia and her allies of Iran, Libya, Turkey, and Saudi Arabia invade her (Ezek. 38-39) in September of 2023. This will be known as *World War III*, since Russia will also declare war with the United States of America [USA] by way of a first-strike nuclear missile attack (Ezek. 39:6). During this war the Islamic [muslim] holy sites of Mecca, Medina, and the Dome of the Rock will be totally destroyed! Prior to this war, the prophetic significance of the *Feast of Trumpets* will be fulfilled with the “snatching out” [Rapture] of all true, born-from-above believers [Christians] (Jn. 3:1-7) on September 17, 2023.

World War III will probably last no longer than ten days with the defeat of Russia and her allies in Israel and the demise of the USA to the amazement of the nations of the world (Ezek. 39:7, 21-23a). The power vacuum created in the world with the destruction of both the USA and Russia will then be filled by the “United States of Europe” known as the European Union [EU] whose president will be Matteo Salvini from Italy, known as the *antichrist*! This man will then be endorsed by an extremely influential Jewish man who is known as the *False Prophet* (Rev. 13). I believe this man will be Jared Kushner, who is the son-in-law of President Donald J. Trump.

The seven years [2,520 days] that will precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus will begin on a day in May 2024 when the leaders of Israel sign a *defense treaty* with the president of the European Union [EU] (Dan. 9:27a). This man will break his agreement with the nation of Israel 1,260 days later (Dan. 9:27b), when he will proclaim himself to be God in the new Jewish Temple in Jerusalem (Mt. 24:15; Mk. 13:14; 2 Th. 2:4). This will begin the three-and-one-half years [1,260 days] of time that the Lord Jesus said would consist of “great tribulation” (Mt. 24:21). This period of time will end with the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ on the *Feast of a Day of Atonement* [Yom Kippur] on September 30, 2028.

The significance of this seven-year treaty must be fully appreciated to understand why it will bring the judgment of God upon both Israel and the world. This will be a *defense treaty*, in which Israel will trust the president of the EU to protect her from any future attacks by all enemies. The signing of this treaty will reveal that Israel does not trust the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob to protect her from any future attacks by potential enemies. This is difficult to understand when God had gloriously magnified Himself before them and the world during the invasion led by Russia (Ezek. 38:16, 23; 39:6-7, 21-22). Thus, this defense treaty can be viewed as a slap in the face of God by a very unappreciative nation of Israel and it will bring the judgment of God upon them for seven years [2,520 days].

A very influential Jewish man will advise Israel to sign this treaty. Thus, he is called the *False Prophet* in the book of *Revelation* (Rev. 13:11-17; 16:13; 19:20; 20:10). This man, like the Antichrist, is also seen as a “beast,” by God for what he will say and do during this period of time. He will be the herald of the antichrist! The *False Prophet* has to be a Jewish man, since he will come up out of the “earth” [land]. The words, *earth* or *land*, when used symbolically in the Holy Bible, always refers to the nation of Israel (Gen. 28:13; Ezek. 38:8-9, 11-12).

However, before the signing of this seven-year defense treaty between the leaders of Israel and the president of the EU, God will seal 144,000 Jewish men (Rev. 7:1-8; 14:1-5) to share the *good news of the coming kingdom of Christ* [Messiah] throughout the world (Mt. 24:14). These men will point to the Rapture as being the supernatural sign from God to authenticate their message! They are the “elect” to whom the Lord Jesus was referring when He said the number of hours required to complete a day prior to His return to earth would be shortened from a rotation of 24 hours to 16 hours (Mt. 24:21-22; Mk. 13:19-20). These are the men who He will protect from being deceived by false messiahs and false prophets (Mt. 24:11, 24; Mk. 13:22; 1 Jn. 4:1). Many of them will be killed in their service to God (Rev. 6:9-11; 14:13). The Lord Jesus has always identified Himself with His believers (Acts 8:1, 3; 9:1-5). Thus, how these men are treated by those being judged after His Second Coming [2nd Advent] to earth will reveal who had become *true* believers in Him and who had not (Mt. 25:31-46).

Immediately after the president [Antichrist] of the EU and the leaders of the nation of Israel sign this seven-year defense treaty, two men from Heaven will appear in the city of Jerusalem (Rev. 11:3). They are the two *Old Testament* prophets who had *never* physically died while on the earth and whose names are Enoch [a Gentile] (Gen. 5:23-24) and Elijah [a Jew] (2 Ki. 2:1-12; Mal. 4:5). They, like the 144,000 Jewish men chosen by God, will tell of the coming kingdom of Christ and warn of the coming judgment of God upon the people of the earth for their continuous rebellion against Him and unbelief in His Holy Word (Rev. 9:20-21; 13:9; 16:9).

The presence of these two men, along with their message and power will torment people throughout the world beginning on the day this treaty is signed. After 1,260 days have passed, God will allow these two men to be murdered. Their bodies will then be left to lay in the streets of Jerusalem for three-and-one-half days. Many of the world’s population will rejoice with the

demise of these two men and give gifts in celebration while looking on television screens around the world as their dead bodies lay in the streets of Jerusalem where they had died. However, after three and one-half days have passed these two men will suddenly rise up from the dead and ascend physically and visibly into the heavens (Rev. 11:4-12) in the same manner as the Lord Jesus in 30 A.D. This will be reality television at its best! However, many people will continue to reject the *Word of God* despite the resurrection from the dead of these two men and their physical ascension into the heavens (Rev. 9:20-21; 16:9, 20; 19:11-19; 20:11-15; 21:8).

The effectiveness of the ministry [service] of these two men from Heaven along with that of the 144,000 Jewish evangelists sealed by God and the three angels from Heaven (Rev. 14:6-12) all of whom will be preaching of the Second Coming [2nd Advent] should be clear to all when you consider the following information. The apostle John could number a 200,000,000-man army coming from the East (Rev. 9:13-16; 16:12) to participate in what is known as the *Battle of Armageddon*. However, John was unable to number the people in Heaven who died for their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ during the “seven years of tribulation” (Rev. 7:9-17; 22:14).

There is something else that must be considered. This treaty between the president of the EU and the nation of Israel will be for a total of seven years [2,520 days] (Dan. 9:27). This period of time is described in the Scriptures in “three” different ways. **The first way** is “a thousand two hundred *and* threescore [1,260] days” for the first half (Rev. 11:3-7) of this treaty and “a thousand two hundred *and* threescore [1,260] days” for the second half of this same treaty (Rev. 12:5-6). The two numbers add up to two thousand five hundred twenty [2,520] days.

**The second way** the period of time for this treaty is described in the Holy Bible is forty-two months for each half of the seven years totaling eighty-four months (Rev. 11:2; 13:5-6). In the Holy Bible, one month consists of thirty days (Gen. 7:11; 8:4). When thirty days are multiplied by forty-two months the total is 1,260 days. When thirty days are multiplied by eighty-four months, the total is 2,520 days.

**The third way** used in the Holy Bible to describe the length of time for this treaty is *time* [one year], *times* [two years] and *half a time* [one-half year] (Dan. 7:25; 12:7; Rev. 12:13-14) for the last half of this seven-year treaty. A year consists of three hundred sixty days as in the time of Noah (Gen. 7:11, 24; 8:3-4). When three-and-one-half are multiplied by three hundred sixty days the total will again equal 1,260 days for the first half of this treaty and 1,260 days for its second half. Thus, the duration of this treaty will ALWAYS total 2,520 days with which ever of the three ways this treaty is described in the Holy Bible!

However, the Lord Jesus stated, “For (Mt. 24:21a; Mk. 13:19a) *in* those days shall be affliction (Mk. 13:19b) then shall be great tribulation (Mt. 24:21b), such as was not since the beginning of the (Mt. 24:21c; Mk. 13:19c) creation (Mk. 13:19d) of the world (Mt. 24:21d), which God created unto this time (Mk. 13:19e), no, nor ever shall be (Mt. 24:21e; Mk. 13:19f). **And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved; but for the**

**elect's sake those days shall be shortened (Mt.24:22). And except the Lord had shortened those days, no flesh should be saved; but for the elect's sake, whom he hath chosen, he hath shortened the days" (Mk.13:20). Notice the progression: 1. Should 2. Shall 3. Had. Amen!**

The Scriptures repeatedly affirm that the 2,520 *days* stipulated in this treaty between Israel and the president of the EU cannot be reduced in number! Yet, the Lord Jesus said these days would be *shortened* to preserve life on the earth for the sake of the "elect" (Mt. 24:22). Again I say, these "elect" of whom the Lord Jesus is referring are the 144,000 Jewish men who are sealed by God to preach the message of the "coming kingdom of Christ" [Messiah] (Mt. 24:14) during the 2,520 days that precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus to earth (Rev. 7:2-8).

I say again, since the number of "days" may not be reduced from the total number of days that are stipulated, in this treaty, God will have to reduce the number of "hours" in each day for His Word to be *literally* true! He will do this by simply increasing the rotation of planet Earth, so that a complete day will consist of sixteen hours (Isa. 13:10-11; Joel 2:30-32; Rev. 8:12) and not the twenty-four hours we are so familiar with.

The consequences for those living on the earth after the rotation of planet Earth is increased will be incredibly significant and catastrophic. There will be violent tides upon all the bodies of water on earth, such as the oceans, lakes, and rivers. Another severe effect will be extremely turbulent air currents with hurricane-force winds becoming a common occurrence. Then, there is the effect an increased rotation of planet Earth will have upon the tectonic plates of the earth's crust to consider. With an increase in its rotation, it is reasonable to surmise and envision a number of major earthquakes taking place around the earth with increased volcanic activity, all of which could be accounted for in the twenty-one judgments of God described in the book of *Revelation*. **"And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved; but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened (Mt.24:22). And except the Lord had shortened those days, no flesh should be saved; but for the elect's sake, whom he hath chosen, he hath shortened the days" (Mk.13:20).**

I have learned during the past forty-plus years, that most people do not want to hear about the return of the Lord Jesus Christ because they find the thought *scary*. Actually, there is good reason to think of the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ as being scary. According to the holy Scriptures, the seven years that precede His Second Coming [[2nd Advent] to planet Earth will be both horrendous and miserable for all who are alive on the earth during this period of time, which brings up another question. Why would the Lord Jesus Christ say, "And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth [near]" (Lk. 21:28)? This word of encouragement would seem irrational and illogical, if the Lord Jesus Christ were referring to the things happening on the earth prior to His Second Coming [2nd Advent]. However, if the Lord Jesus were referring to those things and the way of life just prior to the Rapture, then it would make perfect sense to rejoice.

Another false teaching that is believed by most Christians is that the Rapture could take place at any moment, of any day, and of any year. This is called the **imminency** of the Rapture. This belief began with the church in the city of Thessalonica (1 Th. 1:10; 2:19; 4:14-18; 5:23) and was never corrected by the apostle Paul which is why it is believed true by so many today. However, Paul did not know of the prophetic significance of the seven holy feasts of the LORD and admitted that he only knew in part (1 Cor. 13:9). But when the Holy Bible is complete ALL would be known (1 Cor. 13:10-13).

The truth of the matter is that the Rapture MUST take place on the *Feast of Trumpets* which is the third and final harvest feast of the year for the nation of Israel (Jn. 4:35-38). Some time before the birth of the Lord Jesus Christ, the biblical one-day *Feast of Trumpets* (Ex. 23:16; 34:22; Lev. 23: 23-25; Num. 29:16) was **supplanted** by the two-day, secular Jewish holiday called Rosh HaShanah which began the *secular* Jewish New Year. The prophetic significance of **Trumpets** will be fulfilled, by the Lord Jesus the same as He has fulfilled the previous four *Feasts of the LORD* (Lev. 23) as previously described in the “Seven Holy Feasts of the LORD.”

The Jewish people *knew* three things about the *Feast of Trumpets*. **One:** They knew the day when the high priest would blow the *shofar* on this feast day. **Two:** They also knew that when they heard the sound of the shofar, they were to immediately stop their work of harvesting in the fields and go to the holy Temple where they were to worship the LORD [self-existent One] and offer up their sacrifice (Ex. 23:16; 34:22b; Lev. 23:23-25; Num. 29:1-6). **Three:** Afterwards, they knew they were not allowed to go back to the fields and harvest what grain remained there. They were to simply go home and rest from their labors. Thus, as the time drew ever more near for the blowing of the shofar, those in the fields worked much harder. All of this will be true of those within the Church who strive to share the “good news” [gospel] of the Lord Jesus Christ with others so those they share with will *believe* in the Lord Jesus and be “snatched out” as well (Jn. 4:34-35). Thus, the Rapture is a **motivating doctrine** for those who care for the lost [unsaved] and will cause them to share the gospel of salvation (1 Th. 1:1-10; 2:19; 4:13-5:6, 13) whenever they may.

Another false teaching that is believed by most Christians is that nothing is required to happen prior to the Rapture taking place. However, the apostle Paul wrote that “three” things had to happen prior to the “gathering” [Rapture] of believers in the air with the Lord Jesus (2 Th. 2:1, 3; 1 Th. 5:1-3). **The first thing** that had to happen was for a great apostasy [falling away] from the fundamental biblical doctrines of historic Christianity (2 Th. 2:3). This has happened during the past forty-plus years with the growth of numerous pseudo-Christian movements that emphasize having an “experience” of some kind or participating in religious rituals while twisting the Scriptures (2 Tim. 3:13). The proponents of these movements are unaware that many of the teachings of these movements originated with the occult and *New Age* teachers (Eph. 4:14; 1 Tim. 4:1; 2 Tim. 4:3-4; Heb. 13:9). The reason why they do not know these truths is they have not seen fit to search the Scriptures daily (Acts 17:11; 1 Tim. 4:13-16; Ti. 1:9; 2:1). *Churchianity* has “always” been far more appealing to the majority of people than biblical Christianity!

**The second thing** that had to happen, according to the apostle Paul, was for the identity of the “antichrist” to be known before the Rapture would take place. Anyone expressing this viewpoint in our day and age would be opposed and ridiculed by almost all current-day theologians and believers of the Holy Scriptures. Their position is that the identity of the man known as the Antichrist “cannot” be known prior to the Rapture. However, Paul wrote, “. . . **for that day [the Rapture] shall not come, except there come [the] falling away first [the great apostasy], and that man of sin [the antichrist] be revealed, the son of perdition**” (2 Th. 2:3b).

Therefore, after telling of the Rapture [the gathering together unto Him] (2 Th. 2:1), **Paul is affirming that the identity of the antichrist would be known, by believers [Christians], after the great falling away [apostasy] and BEFORE the Rapture.** The meaning for the word *revealed* is; “to uncover” or to “unveil” or to “disclose” from the Greek word *apokalupto*.” Therefore, to know who the antichrist is before he comes into a position of power (2 Th. 2:8-10) would simply be a fulfillment of Paul’s prophecy (2 Th. 2:3b). This is something that God has done often in the past when He named men years prior to their birth who afterward became historical figures (Amos 3:7). Men such as Isaac (Gen. 17:19), John the Baptist (Lk. 1:13), Josiah (1 Ki. 13:2), Cyrus II, king of Persia (Isa. 44:28-45:4; 2 Chr. 36:22-23; Ezra 1:1-4), Alexander the Great (Dan. 7:6; 8:5-8, 21-22; 11:3) and the men who would divide his kingdom (Dan. 11:4), as well as Antiochus IV Epiphanes [god manifest], the Syrian king (Dan. 11:21-35), who desecrated the Holy Temple by sacrificing a pig in it and would be a precursor to the *antichrist*.

Since the early days of the *Church Age* many have wondered who the man known as the antichrist might be? The word *antichrist* can mean either “against Christ” or “instead of Christ.” This is the man who, according to the Holy Bible, will not only persecute Christians and Jews during the seven years [2,520 days] that precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus to earth, but rule over all of the political, economical, and religious systems in the world. The answers to the following questions to correctly identify this man, may only be found in the Holy Scriptures! Thus, we must ask the following five questions.

### **Question One: Is the Antichrist a Jew or a Gentile?**

The apostle John wrote, “And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise up out of the sea . . . ” (Rev. 13:1). Whenever the Holy Bible uses the word *sea* symbolically, it usually refers to Gentile nations (Rev. 4:6; 15:2; 17:1, 15). It is out of the chaos of the Gentile nations (Isa. 57:20) that this man, who will rule over them, will arise and be forever known as the antichrist [beast] (Rev. 13:2-8). Therefore, the antichrist *must* be a Gentile man!

### **Question Two: From what nation will the antichrist come?**

Daniel 9:26-27 records that AFTER the Messiah [the Lord Jesus Christ] has died, “. . . the people [Romans] of the prince [leader = antichrist] that shall come [future] shall destroy the

city [Jerusalem] and the sanctuary [Temple] . . . And he [antichrist] shall confirm [sign] the covenant [defense treaty] with many [Israel's leadership] for one week [seven years] . . . .”

The Hebrew word *Messiah* and the Greek word *Christos* and the English word *Christ* all mean the “anointed One” (Dan. 9:25; Mt. 16:16, 20; Jn. 1:41; 4:25; 6:66-69; Acts 4:23-28; 10:34-43). The Lord Jesus [*Y'eshua* = Joshua] was the *anointed one* who was sacrificed [died] on the *Feast of the Passover* in 30 A.D. The city of Jerusalem and the holy Temple were destroyed in 70 A.D. by four Roman legions led by Titus, a Roman General, with orders from Vespasian, the Roman emperor, living in Rome [Josephus, Flavius: *The Wars of the Jews*]. Thus, the “prince” [leader = Antichrist] referred to in Daniel 9:26 who is to come MUST be a descendant of the Romans who are found in the modern-day nation of Italy. It is only logical to conclude this since the ancestors of the antichrist are responsible for the destruction of both Jerusalem and the Temple as specified in Daniel 9:26!

The Scriptures are specific in reference to the role of the city of Rome and the man-made religion whose hierarchy is headquartered there that will consolidate and lead an apostate form of Christianity during the first half [1,260 days] of the seven years [2,520 days] of the treaty signed between the president of the EU and the leaders of Israel. This is why so many Christians, in past years, have thought the antichrist would be a **Pope** of the *Roman Catholic Church*. The Holy Bible testifies that the city of Rome and all who live within its confines will be judged and totally destroyed by God 1,260 days prior to the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth (Dan. 9:27; Rev. 17:1-6, 9, 18). Those in Heaven will rejoice when this does take place (Rev. 18:1-24)!

### **Question Three: What is the biblical name of the Antichrist?**

There are many names given to this man in the Holy Bible that describe his thoughts, words and deeds. However, the three names this man is best known by in the holy Scriptures are:

**[a]. The Roman prince [leader]** (Dan. 9:26; Rev. 6:2). In Daniel 9:27 we are told that this man will sign a defense treaty with “many” for one week of years [seven] (Gen. 29:26-28, 30). The many are the people of Israel, since Daniel is writing about the Jews and their city of Jerusalem (Dan. 9:24).

As president of the EU, he will promise, by way of this seven-year defense treaty, to defend Israel against any future foreign aggression against her. Thus, Israel will trust this man for her safety and not the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. It is ironic that this man, who will revile God and those taken in the Rapture (Rev. 13:6) and is viewed as a beast by God, is also described as a “minister” [laborer] of God (Rom. 13:1-4). He will lead the nations of the world against both God and all those who become believers in the Lord Jesus Christ [Christians] during these years (Rev. 13:7-8; 17:14-17; 19:19).

**[b]. The Antichrist** (1 Jn. 2:18). The Greek preposition *anti* can mean either “against” or “in place of.” Such as “against Christ” or “in place of Christ.” This man will declare himself to be God in the new Temple in Jerusalem 1,260 days after signing this seven-year defense treaty with the leaders of Israel (Dan. 9:27; Mt. 24:15; 2 Th. 2:3-4)!

**[c]. The beast** (Rev. 11:7; 13:1-8, 18; 14:9-11; 15:2; 16:2, 10, 13; 17:11-13; 19:19-20; 20:4, 10). This is the only name used for this man in the book of *Revelation* since God views him as though he were a wild animal. The reason is from what this man thinks, says and does during the 2,520 days of his rulership over the nations of the world (Rev. 13:5-6)!

#### **Question Four: What is the rank of the Antichrist?**

His rank is “world dictator” (Rev. 13:7). He will have authority over all nations!

#### **Question Five: What is the serial number of the Antichrist?**

God has assigned the number *666* to this man (Rev. 13:18) to further describe him. According to F. W. Grant, the author of *The Numerical Bible* [Loizeaux Brothers, 1903, eighth printing 1974, p.14, 17], the fundamental thought for the number *three* is “Fullness” or “Completeness” and the fundamental thought for the number *six* is “Manifestation of Evil” when used in the Holy Bible. **Thus, the meaning of the number “six hundred threescore and six” or “666” is *Complete Manifestation of Evil!***

“ . . . Let no man deceive you by any means; for *that day* [the Rapture] *shall not come*, except there come [the] falling away first, [this refers to *professing* Christians who have been deceived by a false gospel] and that man of sin be revealed [identity known], the son [antichrist] of perdition [loss], Who opposeth . . . God” (2 Th. 2:1-4). Though his identity is known prior to the Rapture, this man will not gain his position of power over the nations of the world (Rev. 19:19-20; 20:10) until after these three events take place: **1.** The war recorded in Psalm 83 and Isaiah 17 between Israel and her neighbors. **2.** the Rapture (Jn. 14:1-3). **3.** World War III (Ezek. 38 and 39; 2 Th. 2:6-8) when Russia and her allies invade Israel and nuke the USA (Ezek. 39:6).

On January 1, 1958, the European Economic Community [EEC] came into being as a kind of “United States” of Europe. It is now known as the European Union [EU] and consists of twenty-eight member nations of which nineteen [19] of them currently participate in the *European Commission* that oversees the currency known as the “Euro.” As *President* of the EU, this man will fulfill the dream King Nebuchadnezzar had of a statue of a man with its ten [10] toes mixed with clay and iron (Dan. 2:1, 19, 24-29, 31-45). The ten toes of this statue represent diverse nations. After WWII there will be a world-wide financial collapse that will cause the Antichrist to reduce the number of participants in the European Commission [Euro currency] to ten (Dan. 7:23-25; Rev. 17:12-13). As I have stated, I believe this world leader will be Matteo Salvini of Italy!

The third and last thing that Paul the apostle wrote would happen before the Rapture (1 Th. 4:13-5:2) was “*For when they shall say, Peace and safety, then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child, and they shall not escape*” (1 Th. 5:3). What Paul is speaking of is how those living in Israel will feel after Israel has defeated Syria and her allies in the war recorded in Isaiah 17 and Psalm 83. As has been stated, in this war Israel will also defeat the three Islamic fundamentalist groups of Hezbollah, Hamas, and Isis (Isa. 17:2-3, 12-14; Jer. 49:23-27). Thus, this war will end with the total destruction of the city of Damascus, Syria by way of a nuclear device (Isa. 17:1) in September, 2023.

In the aftermath of this war, Israel will finally have a sense of peace and safety. This is a state of mind that has been impossible for them to acquire with the unwillingness of her neighbor nations to acknowledge her right to even exist as a nation. The magnitude of this military victory over Syria and her allies, all of whom share their borders with Israel, along with the three Islamic organizations that have caused her so much grief and misery, will give the people of Israel a great sense of relief. This will cause Israel to remove the walls she had built to prevent terrorists and suicide bombers from entering her land. As I have said, this is why Israel is described as the “land of unwalled villages” by the *Old Testament* prophet Ezekiel (Ezek. 38:8-12), prior to Israel being invaded by Russia and her allies, in what will become known as World War III in 2023.

The destruction of the city of Damascus with a nuclear device will also wake up the sleeping bride of Christ who was unaware that the Rapture was about to happen. They not only wake from their sleep, but they get up and go out to meet the bridegroom [the Lord Jesus Christ] (Mt. 25:1-13). At this time, few will be saying that we cannot know when the Rapture will take place while quoting Matthew 24:36 and Mark 13:32. The apostle Paul wrote “But ye, brethren, are not in darkness, that that day should overtake you as a thief” (1 Th. 5:4). This is why the Lord Jesus Christ repeatedly said that Christians should watch for His return now known as the Rapture (Mk. 13:33; Mt. 24:37-42; Mk. 13:34-37; Lk. 21:34-36; Mt. 24:43-25:13). It also explains why God expects all “believers” to know when the Rapture will take place. The bride of the Lord Jesus Christ is to be like the Jewish bride who loved her husband and began counting the days for when he would return for her from the day of her espousal to him (2 Cor. 11:2).

As I have repeatedly said, the Lord Jesus Christ will fulfill the *Feast of Trumpets*, which is the third and final harvest feast that God gave the nation of Israel to observe each year, by snatching up [Rapture] His bride [Church] (Jn. 4:34-35; Ti. 2:13). It will be the greatest supernatural sign from God since the birth of the *church* on the Feast of Weeks [Pentecost] (Lev. 23:15-22; Acts 2:1-36) in 30 A.D. and will authenticate the warnings of the coming twenty-one judgments of God upon a Christ-rejecting world and a Christ-rejecting Israel. These twenty-one judgments are described in the book of *Revelation* (Rev. 6:1-19:21). As I have previously explained, some time before the birth of the Lord Jesus Christ the “one-day” biblical *Feast of Trumpets* had been supplanted by the “two-day” secular Jewish holiday of *Rosh HaShanah*. Thus, Israel has a secular calendar that begins on *Rosh HaShanah* and a religious one that begins on the *Feast of Passover*. God, in contrast, has only one calendar beginning with *Passover*!

It is possible that not more than three percent of the world's population will be snatched out [disappear] at the Rapture. If so, this would be about 240,000,000 true, *born from above* believers (Jn. 3:1-7) out of an approximate world population of 8,000,000,000 people living on the earth at that time. It will be impossible for those who are left behind, to have a natural or scientific explanation for the disappearance of those who are taken in the Rapture! This is why the Rapture will be the *sign* the disciples asked for ((Mk. 13:4b) to indicate that everything the Lord Jesus Christ had said would take place, including his Second Coming [2nd Advent], will happen. Those who refuse to believe the biblical accounts of the Rapture will probably say something like "aliens from outer space" took those who disappeared.

Among those who are "left behind" will be many millions of people who thought they were Christians and believers in the Lord Jesus. However, because they had been deceived by a false gospel or were trusting in an "experience" or had participated in a "religious ritual" they were not (Mt. 7:13-18; 2 Cor. 11:3-4, 13-15; Phil. 3:18-19). In the days prior to the Rapture, many *professing* believers will re-examine upon what their salvation had been based (Mt. 25:8-10; 1 Cor. 11:28; 2 Cor. 13:5) and realize they were not true Christians and therefore not ready to meet the Lord Jesus Christ in the air. These people will be left behind and afterwards cry out to the Lord Jesus to come back for them (Mt. 7:21-23; 25:1-12; Lk. 13:22-27). They will point to their *religious* works and acts to justify why they should have been taken by Him. However, because they had never solely believed, by faith alone (Jn. 20:30-31; 1 Cor. 15:1-4) that His sacrifice was sufficient to pay in full the penalty due for their sins, He never knew them.

Many of those who are left behind will *truly* come to trust the Lord Jesus Christ as their personal Savior, by faith alone, and nothing else (Rev. 7:9-17) **after** the Rapture! Thus, they will begin the third "great awakening" of which so many have been anticipating in recent years. As has been said, the number of people who will become "true" Christians [saved] and be willing to die for their faith in Him during the seven years prior to His Second Coming [2nd Advent] will be so great that the apostle John could not number them all (Rev. 5:9; 7:9-17; 22:14). This indicates that the ministry of the 144,000 Jewish evangelists [the elect] and the two men from Heaven [Enoch and Elijah] and the three angels from Heaven who had told of the coming kingdom of Christ on the earth will be extremely successful.

As has been noted, the fundamental thought for the number *forty* is, "Full testing according to the whole responsibility." This is the number that is based on *obedience* to the **revealed will** of God, where either reward or judgment from God follows. The Lord Jesus warned the scribes and the Pharisees in 30 A.D. that the judgment of God would fall upon their generation (Mt. 23:13-36) in 30 A.D. It did so forty years later in 70 A.D. The fundamental thought for the number *three* is "completeness" or "fulfillment." Noah warned of God's coming judgment for one hundred twenty [120] years [3 x 40 = 120] or "*complete testing according to the whole responsibility.*" Only eight people were willing to board the ark that God had Noah build for all who would "believe" and be saved from drowning (Gen. 6:1-8:14). The fundamental thought for the number *eight* is "New Beginning."

Only three people survived the judgment of God with the destruction of Sodom and the other four cities that were in the plains of Jordan (Gen. 13:10-14:3; 19:1-29; ). There were more than two million Jews living in Babylon when their seventy years of captivity was fulfilled (Jer. 25:11; Dan. 9:2). However, most of the Jewish people did not return to Jerusalem when given the opportunity to do so (Ezra 1:1-3; 2:64). They preferred to stay in Babylon. This information has been repeated to remind all that the Scriptures affirm how it is always a very small number or percentage of people who will *believe* the Word of God enough to do the will of the God and avoid the severe consequences for not doing so. The Scriptures confirm that, “It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God” (Heb. 10:31)!

As has been noted, when Russia invades Israel, it will begin World War III. The *end time leader* [Gog] of Russia [Magog] referred to in Ezekiel 38 and 39 is Vladimir Putin, the President of Russia and the chairman of Russia’s most powerful political faction known as the *United Russian Party*. It will be Putin who will direct not only the invasion of Israel, but a first strike nuclear missile attack upon the United States of America (Ezek. 39:6-7), leaving the USA in ruins and her judgment by God complete (Gal. 6:7).

During World War III, Israel will destroy the Muslim holy sites of *Mecca* and *Medina* by way of her nuclear missiles. The holy site known as the *Dome of the Rock* which is located on “Mount Moriah” in Jerusalem will also be destroyed during Russia’s attack upon Israel. The religion of Islam will then cease to exist since without these three Muslim holy sites, Islam cannot exist as a viable religion!

The word “Islam” means, *submission*. The Muslim holy book [*The Koran*] stipulates that ALL of mankind must submit to the Muslim god, *Allah*, or be killed (Surah 2.89-90; 4.56; 5.51; 9.5). This is why fundamentalist Muslims are not willing to cooperate or coexist with any other religion or non-Muslim in the world. They have been assured of entry into Heaven by their spiritual leaders if they should die while killing non-Muslims. Thus, they will willingly sacrifice their own lives to do so.

With the destruction of their three beloved holy sites, Muslims around the world will have no choice but to consider and accept one of the following three reasons for their loss. **One:** Allah was mad at them and, therefore, allowed it to happen. **Two:** Allah was too weak to prevent the destruction of their three holy sites. **Three:** Allah does not exist!

A “one-world religion” is clearly described in the book of *Revelation*, when all religions in the world will coexist and cooperate under the leadership of the *Roman Catholic Church*, headquartered in the city of Rome (Rev. 17:1-19:3). This blending of all religions will be during the first half [1,260 days] of the seven years [2,520 days] that precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ to planet Earth. However, a union of all religions cannot take place and a new Jewish Temple could not be constructed on Mount Moriah by the people of Israel, as long as the religion of Islam continues to exist. Thus, the religion of Islam MUST die!

When Russia and her allies invade Israel, no nation will come to Israel's aid (Ezek. 38:13). It will only be the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob who will protect and defend Israel against those who invade her land! God will defend Israel by way of a major earthquake (Ezek. 38:19-20) and a meteor shower, which will fall upon the invading armies led by Russia. This will cause the invading soldiers to kill each other in their panic to vacate the mountains of Israel (Ezek. 38:21-22). Thus, five out of six [84%] of those who invade Israel in this war will die on her mountains (Ezek. 39:1-5). It will take **seven months** for the people of Israel to bury the dead invaders of World War III. The people of Israel will then burn the spoils of this war for **seven years** as fuel (Ezek. 39:9-16). This war will reveal the glory of God to both Israel and to all of the Gentile nations throughout the world (Ezek. 39:21-29)! Two other armies that had dared invade Israel centuries earlier had suffered a similar fate (Jud. 7:9-22; 1 Sam. 14:15-23).

A third Temple will be built on Mount Moriah after the rubble from the *Dome of the Rock* has been removed from the site. This new Temple will be constructed on the very same building site where the first two Jewish Temples had been. However, unlike those Temples, this one has not been authorized by the God of Israel (1 Chr. 22:6-19; 28:4-6; 2 Chr. 2:1; 3:1-3; Ezra 1:23, 5).

World War III will also witness the destruction of New York City along with the *Federal Reserve* banking system and all stock and commodity exchanges that are headquartered in the USA. Thus, there will be worldwide economic chaos of epic proportions. Gold, silver, oil and all other commodities will soar in value while stocks, bonds and all paper currencies will become worthless. The lack of confidence in any kind of paper currency will cause a new cashless and check-less medium of exchange to be implemented. It will be by way of a computer chip to be inserted in the meat part of the right hand below the thumb or in the forehead of the user (Rev. 13:16-17). The use of this new medium of exchange will be *voluntary* during the first half [1,260 days] of the seven years [2,520 days] that precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ. This digital method of buying goods and services will then become *mandatory* for all to use in the last half of those seven years [1,260 days].

There will be many advantages to this new system of purchasing goods and services. It will prevent the loss of money and assets due to an accident, theft, bad checks, or stolen credit cards. It will stop illegal aliens from entering a country and criminals from leaving. False identification will become a thing of the past, along with identity theft. Fraudulent use of government programs such as Medicare, welfare, and food stamps will end along with income tax evasion, the illegal sale of drugs and secret bank accounts. The *underground economy* will also be severely crippled. This new medium of exchange will ultimately be used as the way to control all of mankind!

In the last half of the seven-year treaty between Israel and the president of the EU, the cashless and check-less medium of exchange will cause both gold and silver to become worthless (Jas. 5:1-6). Thus, it will become *mandatory* to be "micro-chipped" in order to participate in this new medium of exchange. Those who refuse to be *micro-chipped* will be killed under the rule of

the Antichrist. The penalty for all who agree to have this computer chip placed into their body so they are able to buy or sell goods and services will be to spend **eternity** in the *Lake of Fire* (Rev. 13:11-17; 14:9-11), forever separated from their creator God. *Churchianity* will be rejected by many during this period of time (Mt. 24:21; Mk. 13:19; Rev. 13:1-2, 5-8, 11-18; 14:9-11).

These seven years [2,520 days] are also known as the *seventieth week of Daniel* (Dan. 9:24-27) because it is the last week of years (Gen. 29:26-30) that Daniel told of, which concerned themselves primarily with Israel and the holy city of Jerusalem (Dan. 9:24). The two men mentioned in this prophecy are *Messiah, the Prince* [the Lord Jesus Christ] (Dan. 9:25) and the prince that shall come [the antichrist] (Dan. 9:26) who is the “little horn” (Dan. 7:8, 20) and whose people [Romans] would destroy Jerusalem and the Temple after Messiah had been “cut off” [died] (Dan. 9:26).

The mathematics involved in this prophecy are simple to know when you multiply seven weeks of years by the seventy times the “sabbatical” [shemitah] year was ignored by the nation of Israel. The Jewish people failed to observe and obey not only the Word of God, but the *law of God* and His sabbatical years by not allowing the land He gave them to rest every seven years. Thus, the nation of Israel owed God seventy years! This failure to obey God caused the people of Israel to be scattered among the nations of the world, which is what God had often warned them would happen (Lev. 25:1-22; 26:32-39; Dt. 28:58-68; 2 Chr. 36:19-21; Jer. 25:11; Dan. 9:2).

The seventy weeks of Daniel will be fulfilled by way of three different segments of years. They begin with seven weeks of years followed by sixty-two weeks of years and ending with one week of years (Dan. 9:24-27). These weeks of years began with the commandment to restore Jerusalem (Dan. 9:25) after the seventy years of Israel’s captivity in Babylon had been fulfilled (Ezra 1:1-3; Jer. 25:11; Dan. 9:1-2). The sixty-ninth week would conclude with the death of the Messiah (Dan. 9:26) in 30 A.D. who had to be *Y’shua* of Nazareth since He is the only person in human history who met each and every requirement necessary to be the Jewish Messiah as stipulated throughout the *Old Testament* Scriptures (Isa. 7:14; 9:6; 52:13-53:12; Mic. 5:2).

The only decree that is found in the holy Scriptures authorizing the rebuilding of the city of Jerusalem and its walls is recorded in the second chapter of the book of **Nehemiah** in the *Old Testament*. Thus, the first sixty-nine weeks of years found within Daniel’s prophecy began in the 20th year [453 B.C.] (Neh. 2:1-8) in the reign of *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, king of Persia, in the month of Nisan [March-April] and ended in the year 30 A.D. outside the walls of Jerusalem, in the month of Nisan [March-April], with the death of the Lord Jesus Christ. The last week of seven years [2,520 days] is yet to be fulfilled! This period of time is described in two parts (Dan. 9:27). The last half is described as 3.5 years (Rev. 12:14) or 42 months (Rev. 11:2; 13:5) or 1,260 days (Rev. 11:3; 12:6).

It is possible that as many as one billion [1,000,000,000] people will die between the time of the Rapture and the signing of the defense treaty between the president of the European Union

[the antiChrist] and the leaders of Israel. If so, the population of the world will have been reduced to seven billion [7,000,000,000] people when the seven years of death, destruction, and misery begins that will precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus.

According to F. W. Grant, the author of *The Numerical Bible*, the fundamental thought for the number seven is, *perfection*. The fundamental thought for the number three is “completeness or fulfillment.” Thus, the twenty-one judgments [ $3 \times 7 =$  perfect judgment completed or fulfilled] of God are recorded in the book of *Revelation* under three distinct designations or titles with each of them describing seven judgments within them. The titles of these worldwide judgments of God are: **One. The Seal Judgments** **Two. The Trumpet Judgments** **Three. The Bowl Judgments.**

These judgments of God upon the earth are explicit as to what they are and what their effect will be among the inhabitants of planet Earth. They will all take place during the 2,520 days that precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus Christ (Rev. 19:11-16). These judgments by a holy God are the reason why the assembly of believers called the “church” (Acts 2:47; 20:28) or the “body” (Rom. 12:5; 1 Cor. 12:12-14; Eph. 1:22-23) or the “bride” (2 Cor. 11:2; Rev. 19:7-9) of Christ was NEVER to look forward to the Second Coming [2nd Advent] to the earth but only to the Rapture.

**The Seal Judgments** bring the Antichrist (Rev. 6:2) and war (Rev. 6:3-4), followed by famine (Rev. 6:5-6). **One quarter of the earth’s population will be killed** by war, starvation, and hungry animals (Rev. 6:8) **in the first half of this treaty**. Many of God’s 144,000 Jewish evangelists [elect] will also be martyred in their service for the Lord Jesus Christ (Rev. 6:9-11) during this period of time. An exchange of nuclear missiles will cause the death of millions of people (Zech. 14:12; Rev. 6:12-17; 8:1).

**The Trumpet Judgments** begin with another nuclear exchange that will burn a third of all the trees on the earth and all grain (Rev. 8:2-7). A large meteor will land in an ocean that will result in a third of all life and a third of all the ships in that body of water being destroyed (Rev. 8:8-9). A meteor shower will pollute one-third of the earth’s water supply, making the water poisonous and being responsible for the death of many people (Rev. 8:10-11). The 24-hours in a day will be reduced by one-third (Rev. 8:12-13) and Satan will be cast down to earth (Rev. 9:1), bringing a type of virus to torment all of mankind for five months with fever and pain (Rev. 9:2-10). The 144,000 Jewish evangelists [elect] who will have been sealed by God to preach the “coming kingdom of Christ” during this period of time (Rev. 7:2-8) will *not* be affected by this virus. **One-third of the world’s remaining population will then be killed in the second half of this treaty** by invading Asian troops and their armaments (Rev. 9:13-19; 16:12, 14, 16). A huge earthquake and a great pouring of hail upon the earth will take place (Rev. 11:19).

**The Bowl Judgments** begin with a painful sore being received by all those who had the computer chip implanted into their bodies that enabled them to buy or sell goods and services (Rev. 13:16-17; 16:1-2). All sea life will die (Rev. 16:3) and water will become undrinkable

(Rev. 16:4-7). There will be intense **heat** upon the earth (Rev. 16:8-9), with more pain, sores and spiritual darkness (Rev. 16:10-11). The Euphrates River will be dried up and a 200,000,000-man army from the east will use it as a superhighway to march into the valley of Megiddo that is in the northern part of Israel (Rev. 9:16; 16:12). The last war on earth will be between the nations from the eastern part of the world, and the nations from the west, who will be led by the “unholy trinity” of Satan, the Antichrist, and the False Prophet (Rev. 16:13-14). This war is known as the *Battle of Armageddon* (Rev. 16:14, 16; 19:17-19). The Lord Jesus will then end this war with His return to planet Earth and rule for 1,000 years from the city of Jerusalem (Mic. 4:11-13; Zech. 12:10-11; 14:1-11; Rev. 19:11-16).

These twenty-one judgments of God will conclude with an earthquake so powerful that it will level cities and mountains, and sink islands while 100-pound hailstones are falling from the sky (Rev. 16:17-21). Unlike the Rapture, all of these terrible and incredible judgments of God will be explainable in a scientific or natural way by those who choose to reject the *Word of God*, the Holy Bible. These are the events that will take place on the earth during the 2,520 days that precede the Second Coming [2nd Advent] of the Lord Jesus to planet Earth. They include all that will happen during the time that Daniel and the Lord Jesus said would be the worst ever in the history of the world (Dan. 12:1; Mt. 24:21-22; Mk. 13:19-20).

It will be a time in which the nations of the world will be both miserable and confused (Lk. 21:25). A time when men will die from fear in anticipation of what they know is about to next take place (Lk. 21:26). A time when one-half of the world’s population who were alive when the seven year defense treaty was signed, will die. [***When you remove one-quarter from a sum (Rev. 6:8) followed by the removal of another one-third (Rev. 9:13-15), what is left is one-half of what you began with.***] In addition of which two-thirds of all the Jews on the earth will die during this incredible and horrific period of time (Zech. 13:8-9).

I am aware of often repeating myself within this treatise, but I do so to emphasize biblical facts and arguments that have been ignored and mis-taught for years. I say again, when examined logically and rationally one must conclude that these judgments of God are why the return the Lord Jesus told of in His *Olivet Discourse* (Mt. 24:37-39) **MUST** be the return that is now known as the Rapture. **It is both illogical and irrational to believe that the daily life of people will resemble life as we now know it, when the Lord Jesus returns at His “Second Coming” [2nd Advent] to planet Earth (Mt. 24:37-38; Lk. 17:26-30).** It is only the return of His that is *unexpected* and “sudden” that can be compared with the days that preceded the worldwide flood of Noah (Gen. 7:11-24; Mt. 24:34-41; 2 Pet. 2:4-17; 3:3-6) and the destruction of the city of Sodom (Gen. 19:24-25).

A sidebar to the twenty-one judgments of God that are recorded in the book of *Revelation* is the number of very significant events that will take place at the “midway” point of the 2,520 day period of time concerning this treaty between Israel and the leader of the EU. They include events like the killing of the two witnesses of God (Rev. 11:3-12) and the breaking of the defense

treaty by the EU leader with Israel who will then proclaim himself to be God and demand he be worshipped in the new Jewish Temple in Jerusalem (Dan. 9:27; Mt. 24:15; Mk. 13:14; 2 Th. 2:3-4). Satan will be cast out of the heavens (Rev. 12:7-9) and cease being the “prince of the power of the air” (Eph. 2:2). The antichrist is *almost* assassinated with what APPEARS to be a mortal head wound (Rev. 13:3-4, 12). Satan will then indwell this man who will in turn, relentlessly persecute the Jewish people. Many of the Jewish people will then flee from Jerusalem for the safety of **the city of Petra** which is located in the nation of Jordan (Mt. 24:16-20; Mk. 13:14-18; Rev. 12:1-6, 12-17). The city of Rome with her worldwide religious coalition that is led by the *Roman Catholic Church* will be totally destroyed by way of a nuclear missile (Rev. 14:8; 17:1-18:19). This will cause *all* in Heaven to rejoice (Rev. 18:20-19:6)! These events and things will all take place at the halfway point of Daniel’s seventieth week of years.

The Lord Jesus will end the *Battle of Armageddon* with His Second Coming [2nd Advent] to earth and physically cast the two men called the Antichrist and the False Prophet into the *Lake of Fire* (Rev. 19:11-21). He will then have Satan chained and sealed in an *abyss* for 1,000 years (Rev. 20:1-3) after which Satan will be released for a season of *forty years*. After his release from the abyss, Satan will instigate his final rebellion against his “creator” by way of using mankind (Rev. 20:7-9). Afterward, Satan will then be cast into the *Lake of Fire*, where the Antichrist and the False Prophet have been for the past 1,040 years and be tormented forever and ever with them (Rev. 20:10).

During His first seventy-five days (Dan. 12:11-12) on planet Earth, the Lord Jesus will judge (Mt. 25:31-46) all those who lived through Daniel’s 70th week of years. The “sheep” in this judgment are those people who came to trust Him as their personal “Savior” by faith alone and proved their faith by what they did on behalf of those Jewish evangelists [elect] they encountered during the years of judgment and tribulation (Mt.25:34-40). Once again the Lord Jesus will identify Himself with those who believe in Him as their Savior (Acts 9:1-5) the same as He has “always” in the past (Acts 9:1-5). These people [sheep] will then enter into the 1,000 year *Messiah’s Kingdom Age* where they will begin to rebuild a world in ruins and to repopulate it under the rulership of the Lord Jesus Christ from His throne in Jerusalem (Isa. 2:2-5; 9:6b-7; 11:1-12:6; 52:1-10; 60:1-22; 65:18-25; Jer. 23:3-8; Ezek. 37:20-28; Dan. 2:35, 44-45; 7:13-14, 27; Mic. 4:1-7; Rev. 20:6).

The “goats” are those people who ignored the warnings about the microchip they had implanted into their body, which enabled them to buy or sell goods and services (Rev. 13:11-17; 14:9-11). Their lack of concern for the Jewish evangelists [the “elect”] they had encountered (Mt. 25:41-46) revealed they had not become true believers in the Lord Jesus Christ as their personal Saviour. These people [goats] will then be cast into the “torment” section of Hades (Lk.16:19-31) to await their being judged at the *Great White Throne Judgement* that will take place 1,040 years in the future (Rev. 20:11-15). The *Great White Throne Judgment* will be for all of the “unsaved” people who lived on the earth during one of the five “ages” [dispensations] of mankind who refused, like Cain (Gen. 4:1-8), to do the revealed *will* of God (1 Sam. 15:22-23; Mt. 7:21). As

has been explained before, these five **ages** [dispensations] are identified as: **One.** Innocence **Two.** Beginnings **Three.** Law **Four.** Grace [the one in which we presently live] **Five.** Messiah's Millennium Kingdom.

Mankind was created in the image of God (Gen. 1:26-27; 9:6)! Thus, like the angels, mankind is an "immortal spirit being with a free will." However, unlike the angels, mankind was given a physical body in which their immortal spirit dwells. The word "life" means *connection*. The word "death" means *separation*. Upon *physical death*, the spirit of a man or of a woman is separated from the body in which it had dwelt (Ps. 72:14; 116:15; Lk. 16:19-31; 2 Cor. 5:8; Rev. 14:13). This separation is called the "first" death [separation]. Those who disobeyed the revealed *will* of God during their lifetime on earth will then learn at the Great White Throne Judgement that their name had been blotted out of the *Lamb's Book of Life* [connection] (Ex. 32:32-33; Ps. 69:28; Phil. 4:3; Col. 2:12-14; Rev. 3:5; 13:8) and their sins had been transferred and engraved (Acts 3:19) in the *Book of Works* and the *Book of Death* [separation] (Rev. 20:11-12, 15). The penalty for their disobedience to do the will of God while alive on earth will cause them to forever be "separated" from the presence of God at the *Great White Throne Judgment*. This is the "second" death [separation] that is referred to in the book of Revelation 20:6, 14.

I am also convinced that God is going to create a "third race" of beings in *eternity future* for whom members of the Church/Body/Bride who are in Heaven will intercede on their behalf throughout eternity. I say this because like the nation of Israel (Ex. 19:5-6), who were called to be a kingdom of priests and failed, all Christians [believers] are members of a kingdom of priests (1 Pet. 2:9; Rev. 1:5-6). It is the duty of a priest to intercede for others (Job 42:8; Col. 4:12; 1 Tim. 2:1; Heb. 4:15; 5:10; 8:1; 9:11-15). We know that eternity future will be populated by saved angelic beings and human beings who will have no need for intercession. Therefore, there must be a new race of beings who will need to be interceded for throughout eternity.

The first race of created beings were the angels of which one-third rebelled against their creator God (Job 38:4-7; Isa. 14:12-17; Rev. 12:3-9). Human beings were the second race created by God. The Scriptures confirm that ALL of mankind has sinned against the One who created them (Rom. 3:23). The new race of created beings in "eternity future" will *never* sin against their Creator due to the intercession on their behalf by the forgiven of mankind. The angels will live in Heaven with *God, the Father*. Forgiven human beings will live in the "heavenly city of Jerusalem" with the Lord Jesus Christ (Rev. 21:1-7, 9-22:5). The new third race of created beings will live on the "new earth" (2 Pet. 3:13).

I have been saying for years that God is in the process of judging the United States of America [USA] for her many sins (Prov. 14:34). God is now judging the USA by way of economics and changed weather patterns and corrupt political leadership. The fact that the USA cannot be found in Bible prophecy indicates that an event with severe consequences will take place upon the greatest nation in the history of the world prior to the signing of the seven year treaty between the president [antichrist] of the EU and the leaders of Israel (Dan. 9:27). The

demise of the USA could be from an economic collapse or a nuclear attack by an enemy nation or from natural disasters like a meteor shower, tornados, floods, earthquakes, hurricanes, drought, or the loss of electrical power due to a massive solar flare from the sun or an “electro magnetic pulse” [EMP] attack from a nuclear explosion in the atmosphere of the USA. Whatever the reason may be, it is clear that the USA will no longer be a world power when this treaty is signed on a day in May 2024!

I say again that I am not a prophet of God nor do I perceive myself as being one. I believe the last true prophet of God was the apostle John (Rev. 22:18-19). Therefore, I want it to be understood that none of my findings and viewpoints or pronouncements come from my receiving any extra-biblical revelations. I am a watchman (Ezek. 33:1-9) who believes that the holy Scriptures of the LORD [self-existent One] contains all that is necessary to know of future events. Thus, because of my findings and convictions, I am sharing them with all who might care to know, since I do not think that much of what is contained in this treatise is known by very many people, including Christians. I truly do hope and pray that the contents of this treatise will enlighten, edify, and encourage all those who read it and that they be like the Bereans who searched the Scriptures daily to learn whether or not the things they had been told were true or not (Jn. 5:39, 46-47; Acts 17:10-12; 1 Jn. 4:1). *God forbid that I be guilty of teaching falsely!*

God revealed Himself to mankind beginning with Adam. God then did the same with men like Enoch and Noah and then through His written word, using men like Moses and Daniel. The love of God for mankind is revealed throughout His holy Scriptures (1 Jn. 4:19). The greatest sign of God’s love for mankind was to send *God, the Son*, the second personality in the triune Godhead, to join Himself with mankind in the person of the Lord Jesus Christ to save sinners (1 Tim. 1:15) as the one and only *God-man*. As I have repeatedly said throughout this treatise all that is required to be “saved” in our current *Age of Grace* is to simply believe [trust] in His finished work as being sufficient enough payment for all of your personal sins (Jn. 20:30-31). The love of God for each of us was proven by the Lord Jesus Christ when He was separated from the other two members of the triune Godhead for three hours (Mt. 27:45-46) while on His cross at Mount Calvary (Isa. 52:13-53:11). I have also noted that no man or angel will ever be able to fully comprehend His anguish and how He suffered during that time of separation for the sins of all who would believe in Him (Mt. 26:36-44; Mk. 14:32-42; Lk. 22:39-46; Heb. 5:5-10).

The Lord Jesus Christ made a statement that must be believed by all who desire to be Heaven-bound. It is a statement that is intolerant and exclusive of all man-made religions and all other spiritual teachings and beliefs. **“Jesus saith . . . I am the way, the truth, and the life; no man cometh unto the Father, but by me” (Jn. 14:6)**. Those who believe this statement, and act upon it, will enjoy the fellowship of God in Heaven, throughout eternity. Those who choose not to believe it, will spend eternity forever separated from God, in the *Lake of Fire*. How would YOU answer this question? **‘Upon what is your salvation based?’** Do you agree that no one is righteous enough for Heaven by their own efforts (Rom. 3:10-12; 4:5; 5:1; 6:23; 7:18-19, 25)?

# Epilogue

The Lord Jesus ended His *Sermon on the Mount* with three warnings. He did this because God is not willing that anyone should perish (2 Pet. 3:9). These three warnings should cause all to ask the following three questions: **1.** What is the one and only way that will lead to eternal life (Mt. 7:13-14)? **2.** Who are the false prophets [teachers] that will deceive many (Mt. 7:15)? **3.** Why will so many who call Jesus Christ, *Lord*, not be able to enter into the kingdom of Heaven (Mt. 7:21-23)? The correct answers can only be found in the Holy Bible (Jn. 14:6)! We will now examine the three specific warnings with which the Lord Jesus closed His *Sermon on the Mount* and how they pertain to every man, woman, and child who has ever been conceived and born.

## The First Warning

(Matthew 7:13-14)

### The Way

The first of these three warnings described the two *ways* that people had to choose taking. Each of these ways would lead to gates through which they would reach their eternal destiny. The first way is described as the *broad* [wide] way that most people will take even though it leads to their *destruction* [loss]. In contrast, the second way is described as being the *narrow* [compressed] way, that would lead to eternal *life* [connection] with God. Thus, the eternal destiny of every human being, will be determined by the way [road] they choose to take (Mt. 7:13-14).

As the Lord Jesus Christ made His way towards Jerusalem, He was asked if only a “few” people would be *saved* (Lk. 13:23). His answer was that many would seek to enter through the *narrow* gate by eating and drinking in his presence [participating in Communion] and heard His teachings [Bible studies and sermons] (Lk. 13:26). In other words, they are and will be depending on what they did to warrant their entry into Heaven. These people believed that they “knew” the Lord Jesus by their activities and, therefore, belonged to Him. However, He described these people as being workers of *iniquity* [sin] and as a result, rejected them (Lk. 13:27). This indicates that unless we know the difference between religious works and simple trust [belief] we are all in danger of being rejected by the Lord Jesus Christ!

There can only be one reason why the Lord Jesus Christ would reject these people who thought they knew and belonged to Him. The reason being that they were engaged in a form of *religion* while using His name. These people never did completely believe the “bad news” of the *Old Testament*, that there is nothing we can do that will ever justify us before a holy and sinless God (Isa. 64:6). Therefore, they did not truly believe the “good news” of the *New Testament* which teaches that salvation is solely by the grace of God, and is based only upon the finished

work of the Lord Jesus Christ (Jn. 19:30) as payment in full for all of their sins (1 Tim. 1:15) and upon nothing they have done or will do (Rom. 4:5). This is why, the people who the Lord Jesus was speaking about, proceeded to describe what they had done in His name to justify their worthiness (Lk. 13:26). In other words, they were relying upon faith in Him *plus* their religious or good “works” in His name, to justify their personal salvation. This is what people do who are trusting in the teachings of their particular or personal “religion!”

The Lord Jesus used the illustration of two different *gates* which people would enter through (Mt. 7:13-14) to describe what made them different. One of the gates is *narrow* [representing the Lord Jesus Christ] in contrast to the other gate, which is *wide* [representing all man-made religions and spiritual beliefs]. Those who entered through the narrow gate would have *eternal life* [connection] with God and those who entered through the wide gate would suffer *destruction*. The English word “destruction” is translated from the Greek word *apoleia* which means, “loss,” or “a loss of well being.” The narrow gate is both difficult to find and difficult to go through in contrast to the wide gate that is both easy to find and easy to enter through. The *reward* for the few that do go through the narrow gate will be *eternal life* [connection] in Heaven. The penalty for those who go through the wide gate will be *eternal torment* in the “Lake of Fire” (Mt. 13:41-42, 49-50; Rev. 14:9-11; 19:20; 20:10-15; 21:8).

The Lord Jesus said, “. . . no man cometh unto the Father, but by me” (Jn. 14:6). This exclusive and definitive statement by the Lord Jesus was given to reveal the fact that the only way to Heaven was by solely trusting in Him as their personal Savior, by faith alone! This is why one must conclude that all of the other ways to heaven that other religions, beliefs, and spiritual disciplines teach and profess, must be part of the broad way that will lead to the “wide gate.” This is the gate that most people will go through during their life on earth.

The *broad way* that leads to the wide gate is comprised of, but not limited to the following religions, beliefs, and disciplines: Agnosticism, Alcoholism, Americanism, Amillennialism, Angelism, Anglo-Israelism, Animisticism, Anti-materialism, Antinomianism, Anti-semitism, Arianism, Aristocracyism, Aristotelianism, Arminialism, Armstrongism, Ascended Mastersism, Asceticism, Astrologyism, Atheism, Authoritarianism, Bahaism, Baptism, Brahmanism, British Israelism, Buddhism, Calvinism, Cannibalism, Capitalism, Casteism, Catholicism, Ceremonialism, Charism, Chauvinism, Chi Gongism, Churchism, Christian Reformism, Christian Scienceism, Circumcism, Colonialism, Communism, Confucianism, Congregationalism, Conservatism, Darwinism, Decisionism, Deism, Demonism, Denominationalism, Despotism, Dominionism, Divinationism, Druidism, Dualism, Eastern Mysticism, Ecclesiasticism, Eckankarism, Ecumenism, Egoism, Elitism, Emotionalism, Empiricism, Episcopalianism, Esotericism, Evangelicalism, Environmentalism, Evolutionism, Existentialism, Experiencism, Extrasensoryism, Extraterrestrialism, Falun Gongism, Fascism, Fatalism, Feminism, Feudalism, Formalism, Freudianism, Gaiaism, Globalism, Gnosticism, Hedonism, Hermeticism, Hinduism, Homosexuality, Humanism, Idealism, Illuminism, Imperialism, Individualism, Islamism, Institutionalism, Intellectualism, Jacobinism, Jainism,

Judaism, Jungism, Legalism, Leninism, Lesbianism, Liberalism, Lucifarianism, Lutherism, Majoritarianism, Manichaeism, Marianism, Marxism, Masonism, Materialism, Methodism, Modernism, Muhammadanism, Monarchianism, Monotheism, Moralism, Moral Relativism, Mormonism, Multiculturalism, Mysticism, Narcissism, Nationalism, Nation of Islamism, Native Religionism, Naturalism, Naturism, Nazism, Neo-darwinism, Neo-freudianism, Neo-nazism, Neoplatonism, Nepotism, New-age Mysticism, New World Orderism, Nonmoralism, Norse Paganism, Occultism, One Worldism, Orthodoxyism, Pacifism, Paganism, Pantheism, Paternalism, Patriotism, Pelagianism, Pentecostalism, Phenomenalism, Pietism, Platonism, Pluralism, Politicizism, Polytheism, Post-millennialism, Pragmatism, Presbyterianism, Preterism, Protestantism, Proxyism, Psychologyism, Qabalah/Kaballahism, Qi Gongism, Racism, Rastafarianism, Rationalism, Reconstructionism, Reincarnationism, Relativism, Roman Catholicism, Ritualism, Rosicrucianism, Sabellianism, Sacramentalism, Sadomasochism, Santeriaism, Satanism, Scientology, Scientism, Sectarianism, Secularism, Semitism, Seventh-Day Adventism, Shamanism, Shintoism, Sikhism, Socialism, Social Activism, Spiritualism, Subjectivism, Subordinationism, Supernaturalism, Syncretism, Talmudism, Taoism, Terrorism, Theism, Theocentrism, Theosophyism, Totalitarianism, Traditionalism, Transcendentalism, Tritheism, Uniformitarianism, Unitarianism, Universalism, Utopianism, Vegetarianism, Witch Craftism, Yezidiism, Yogaism, Zionism and Zoroastrianism. The holy Scriptures describe those who are trusting in any of the aforementioned religions, beliefs and disciplines in this manner, **“The way of a fool is right in his own eyes, but he that hearkeneth unto counsel is wise”** (Prov. 12:15). Also, **“There is a way which seemeth right unto a man, but the end thereof are the ways of death” [separation from God]** (Prov. 14:12; 16:25).

Martin Luther was one of the leaders of the *Protestant Reformation* during the 16th century. He knew that “salvation” was not something that could be earned or attained by doing anything other than to simply believe in the gospel [good news] of Jesus Christ (Rom. 4:5). This caused Luther and others to breakaway from the *Roman Catholic Church* with its religious doctrines, rituals, and traditions. The reformers knew that according to the Holy Bible, *salvation* was a gift from God. Thus, the “Protestant [under protest] Movement” was based upon “sola gratia” [grace alone] (Eph. 2:8-9), by “sola fide” [faith alone] (Rom. 5:1), through “sola Scriptura” [Scripture alone] (2 Tim. 3:16-17), and “soli Dio gloria” [to God alone be glory].

It is extremely difficult for most people to “believe” [trust], that what the Lord Jesus Christ did by way of His death, burial, and resurrection (1 Cor. 15:1-4), is enough to save them from receiving the penalty they deserve for their sins. This is why the apostle John was compelled to use the word “believe” **sixty** different times in his gospel and various forms of the word *believe* an additional **forty** times. John, in his gospel, never instructed, stipulated, or mandated that anyone had to “repent” or make Jesus “Lord of their life” or be “baptized” or do anything other than to simply “believe” in Him in order to be *saved* (Jn. 20:30-31). If anything else were necessary to do, in order to be saved, then John would have been remiss for not including it with the reason for writing his gospel [good news]!

The holy Scriptures have revealed that all of mankind is born with a rebellious “sin nature” towards God (Ps. 51:5; 58:3; Jn. 3:6; Rom. 5:12; Eph. 2:1-3). This rebellious sin nature is exhibited and revealed by the things we think, say, do, or don’t do during our lifetime on earth. It would seem an impossible task to choose one song out of the countless number of songs that have been written and sung throughout the ages, which would best illustrate the sin nature of mankind towards the will of God. The reason being that the chosen song would have to express not only the attitude of mankind towards God, but also how mankind is willing to obey and worship and sacrifice to God. However, the choice of this illustrative song is not difficult at all. The song that would best describe how mankind prefers to obey, worship and sacrifice to God is, “My Way!” which was originally recorded by Frank Sinatra.

It is the “sin nature” we are born with that causes each of us to want to be the same “way” with God as Cain was. We want everything we do with, to, or for God to be based upon the condition that it be done according to “our way” and not by “His will.” Cain was the first man who exhibited this trait by sacrificing to God what he had determined was a worthy sacrifice and not what God had demanded from him. Mankind, has done the same ever since by ignoring what God has to say on the subject as recorded in the Holy Bible. Thus, it is our “sin nature” that causes us to oppose, disobey, and rebel against the “instructions” or the “commandments” of God and His “will” for us!

The majority of the men and women who lived during the time of God’s “instructions,” prior to the “law of Moses,” opposed, disobeyed, and rejected God’s “will” for them. The majority of the people who lived during the time after the giving of God’s “commandments” to Moses did the very same thing. As they were then, we are now. In our time, few are willing to do things according to the revealed will of God. They simply refuse to do things God’s way (Lk. 13:23-24)!

God made it clear to Cain and Able that He would only accept a lamb to be sacrificed for the *covering* of their sins against Him. God then gave instructions for additional sacrifices for the Israelites to offer Him for the covering of their sins. God has now made it clear, by way of His holy Scriptures that He will only accept the one-time sacrifice of the Lord Jesus Christ for the *remission* of all sins by those who simply believe (1 Cor. 15:1-4) and nothing else. Also, that the one-time sacrifice made by the Lord Jesus Christ is *sufficient*, with nothing more to be offered or done, by anyone to be saved (Gal. 2:16; Heb. 10:4, 10, 12, 14, 17-18). Thus, solely believing [trusting] in the sacrifice of the Lord Jesus Christ, by faith alone, is the only way to Heaven (Acts 4:12)!

“ . . . Jesus saith . . . **I am the way** . . . no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.”  
(Jn. 14:6)!

# The Second Warning

(Matthew 7:15-20)

## The Truth

The second of the three warnings that the Lord Jesus Christ ended His *Sermon on the Mount* with had to do with “church” leaders and teachers who will distort and deny the historic fundamental doctrines of biblical Christianity. Those who distort and twist the truth in the name of Christianity will be preachers, pastors, priests, bishops, cardinals, elders, deacons, evangelists, doctors of theology, etc. The people who believe these false teachers and their false teachings will think they are “saved” and will *profess* to be Christians. However, the sad truth is they are not Christians, because they have not been “born-again” (Jn. 3:1-7). They have simply been deceived by a false gospel!

The teachings of all Christian educators, clergy, and laymen are always to be compared to what the Holy Bible has to say, regarding the subject matter being taught. Consider this warning from the Lord Jesus Christ, “Beware of false prophets [teachers], who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves” (Mt. 7:15). The apostle Paul amplified this warning when he said, “For I know this, that after my departing shall grievous wolves enter in among you, not sparing the flock. Also of your own selves shall men arise, speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples [learners] after them. Therefore, watch, and remember, that for the space of three years I ceased not to warn everyone night and day with tears” (Acts 20:29-31). Another warning came from the apostle Peter, “But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who [secretly] shall bring in [destructive] heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction. And many shall follow their pernicious ways . . .” (2 Pet. 2:1-2). Thus, false teachers of the holy Scriptures will deceive many of those who faithfully attend “Christian” churches!

It was common, during the days of the Lord Jesus Christ, for a man to indicate what his profession was by the clothing he wore. A rabbi might wear a blue-fringed robe or there was the special dress of the priests. A shepherd, that led a flock of sheep, usually wore coverings made from skinned sheep. His clothing would identify him to others as being a shepherd of sheep. The responsibilities of the shepherd was to care for his flock by leading them to green pastures, where they could feed, and to still waters to drink, since sheep will not drink from a fast-flowing stream of water. It was the duty of the shepherd to protect his flock from wild animals and those who might try to steal them (Ps. 23; Jn. 10:11-16). The lives of the sheep depended upon their shepherd!

The relationship between the shepherd and his flock of sheep, during the times of the Lord Jesus was a very intimate one. The shepherd knew each member of his flock individually (2 Tim. 2:19), and those of his flock knew him by the sound of his voice. The first thing a lamb

heard upon being born was the shepherd's voice as it was being dried off. It was the shepherd's voice that the flock came to know and trust as they followed him to wherever he led them. When shepherds met in the field, and fellowshiped together, there was no concern among them while the flocks of sheep co-mingled together. Each shepherd knew that the members of their flock would follow them by the sound of their voice as they left the area where the co-mingling took place (Jn. 10:3-5, 14, 27).

It was the shepherd who would lie across the entrance to the "sheep fold" at night in order to protect them from wild animals. This act also made him the "door" that one would have to go through in order to become a member of the flock that he was the shepherd of (Jn. 10:2, 7, 9). The sheep of the flock felt so secure and were so confident in their shepherd's leadership, care and presence, that they would follow him with absolute trust to wherever he might go!

The pastoral scene of a flock of sheep following a shepherd whom they trust to look out for their well-being and to provide for their nourishment and safety is both picturesque and comforting. The same scene viewed with a hungry wolf leading the same trusting flock of sheep to their doom is not only horrifying, but the consequences dreadful to contemplate. The illustration of a wolf leading a flock of sheep is a perfect description of what is taking place in the majority of Christian *denominations* and churches throughout the world today!

The false Bible teachers, whom the Lord Jesus Christ said would come dressed in *sheep's clothing*, are men and women who are the pastors and leaders of "professing" Christian churches! These churches are made up of people who trust their leaders to guide them in biblical truths and to feed them the "Word of God" correctly. They are also trusting their leaders to protect them from being deceived or deluded by false teachings. False Bible teachers appear to be faithful shepherds who can be trusted. These are the people who the apostle Paul warned would come preaching *another* gospel (2 Cor. 11:4). They are deceitful workers who appear to be ministers of righteousness, the same as Satan who transformed himself into an angel of light (2 Cor. 11:13-15). The deception of false teachers will characterize the end of our current *age* known as "Grace" (Mt. 24:11, 24; 1 Jn. 4:1).

There are many well known Christian leaders, pastors, and teachers of theology who can be described as being *wolves* who are dressed in sheep's clothing! Some of the false gospels that these people will preach and teach include those known as the "health and wealth gospel" or the "prosperity gospel" or the "possibility gospel" or the "name it and claim it gospel" or the "you have to repent and be baptized gospel" or the "participate in a specific sacrament gospel" or "make a decision for Jesus gospel" or the "give your heart or life to Jesus gospel" or the "you have to first make Jesus your Lord, before you can have Him as your Savior gospel" or the "have an experience" gospel or the "word of faith gospel" and such. The Lord Jesus compared the results of these teachings with bad fruit coming from a corrupt tree. In other words, the corrupt tree [false Bible teachers and their false gospels] will produce corrupt fruit [deceived, unsaved, "professing" Christians] (Mt. 7:16-20).

Those who teach and preach the aforementioned false gospels do not understand or appreciate the fact that God does ALL of the “giving” and we do all of the RECEIVING when it comes to the *gift* of salvation. A “gift” is always received by the simple act of accepting it. If the one accepting the gift had to do something in exchange for the gift they are receiving, then it would no longer be a gift. It is for this reason that we do not attempt to *ensure* our salvation by giving or doing something for Him to make sure that He will forgive us. Those who do this are then trusting something that they have done, are doing, or hope to do, *in addition* to what the Lord Jesus Christ has done to assure themselves of their salvation. Those who do this are then, *unknowingly*, engaged in a form of religion. Unfortunately, the teachings that are most often heard are those that compel them to do these things. Thus, most *professing* Christians have been either “deceived” or “deluded” into thinking they are Christians when in reality they are not!

Only God knows how many pulpits are presently occupied by professing Christian Bible teachers who are teaching a false gospel! It is for this reason that the responsibility, to determine the truth of what is being taught, rests upon the one being taught. This is why we are told to search the Scriptures (Jn. 5:39) and to test the spirits (1 Jn. 4:1) and to be sure that what is being taught is true. This is what the people of Berea were commended for doing (Acts 17:10-11).

I again ask, “Upon what is your salvation based?” Is this your answer? *I am solely trusting in the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ, by faith alone, for my forgiveness, redemption, and justification before a holy and perfect God and nothing else.*

A fundamental Christian truth is that any man or woman who says or teaches it is necessary to do something or *anything* other than to *solely* believe [trust] in the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ, by faith alone, in order to be “saved” is preaching a false gospel! In other words, there is only ONE thing that each of us are to do to attain forgiveness of all the sins we are each guilty of and to obtain eternal life with God. That one thing is to simply “trust” [believe] that what the Lord Jesus did, while on His cross at Calvary, was sufficient enough to forever cleanse us of all our sins. This includes all of our sins, no matter when they were committed, including the past, the present, or the future. They have been paid in full by our blessed Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ (Jn. 19:30)!

The following list of Christian leaders, Bible teachers, clergy, and laymen are just a few of the many who are guilty of having said and taught that you must do TWO or more things in order to be *saved*. This teaching is not biblical and is contrary to the historic fundamental doctrines of biblical Christianity in regards to the subjects of salvation, justification and the atonement of the Lord Jesus Christ. Some of those named here were very well known in past years and some of them are well-known in our present day and age. They include: Bill Hamon, Benny Hinn, Pat Robertson, Peter Popoff, Larry Lea, John MacArthur, Norman Vincent Peale, Kenneth and Gloria Copeland, Paul and Jan Crouch, Earl Paulk, Ernest Angley, Ellen G. White, Jim Baker, Tammy Faye Baker, Kenneth E. Hagin, Mary Baker Eddy, Oral Roberts, Robert Tilton, Gary North, Jimmy Swaggart, Billy Graham, Chuck Colson, D. James Kennedy, James

Lovell, Kay Arthur, Frederick Price, Charles Capps, Jerry Rose, Robert Schuller, Paul Yong Cho, Bill McCartney, Pope John Paul II, Joseph Smith, Jr., Brigham Young, Casey Treat, Della Reese, Emilie H. Cady, Jerry Savelle, Herbert W. Armstrong, Nathan H. Knorr, Garner Ted Armstrong, Paul Billheimer, E. W. Kenyon, D. M. Baillie, Morris Cerrallo, Emanuel Swedenborg, Charles Taze Russell, Joseph F. Rutherford, Phineas Parkhurst Quimby, Charles and Myrtle Fillmore, Howard Rand, and Johnnie Coleman. There are many others who teach that it is necessary to do TWO or more things to be “saved” or to become a “Christian” besides those who have been named here. The majority of which are local church officers with the title of reverend, pastor, deacon, bishop, doctor, apostle, etc.

The Hebrew and Greek words from which the English word *salvation* is translated imply the ideas of deliverance, safety, preservation, healing, and soundness. Therefore, the word *salvation* gathers into itself all the redemptive acts and processes such as grace, forgiveness, redemption, propitiation, justification, imputation, sanctification and glorification (Prov. 3:5-6; 1 Cor. 1:30; 2 Cor. 5:21; 1 Jn. 4:10). The word “salvation,” is the great inclusive word of the “Good News” of Jesus Christ (1 Jn. 3:5)! Therefore, I say again, that the Holy Bible clearly teaches that eternal “salvation” is attained solely by the grace of God, through faith alone, in the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ while on His cross at Mount Calvary. Therefore, salvation is a free *gift*, without the involvement of any “works” by the recipient! The result being the justified “believer” is to have nothing laid to his charge (Rom. 8:31-34).

A “work” is what one does to be saved or to be *righteous* before God. A *work* is thought to be “necessary” by those who do not believe that the “sacrifice” of the Lord Jesus Christ, is sufficient, by itself, to save them (Rom. 3:27-28; 4:1-8; 6:23; Eph. 2:8-9). The people who refuse to offer the “lamb of God” (Jn. 1:29, 35; 3:14-15), for the forgiveness of their sins, are no different than Cain who refused to offer to God a lamb (Gen. 4:1-16). Thus, it is necessary to first “do” the will of God (Ps. 40:8; Lk. 6:46) in order to be “in” the will of God (Mt. 7:21). Those who seek to *ensure* their salvation by doing a religious act of some kind will remain “unsaved” [lost] (Prov. 14:12; 16:25; Isa. 64:6)!

After hearing Peter’s message about the Lord Jesus (Acts. 2:22-36), this question was asked of Peter, by the men of Israel, “. . . what shall we do” (Acts 2:37)? “Then Peter said unto them, Repent [“have a change of mind”], and be baptized [“identified”], every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission [“a dismissal or release”] of sins, and ye shall receive the gift [“indwelling”] of the Holy Spirit” (Acts 2:38). The response by the people was to first *believe* which led them to having a “change of mind” and then to identify themselves with the Lord Jesus Christ. Thus, the *cause* of Christian salvation always begins with “belief.” The *effect* is what is done in His name afterward!

All who desire to attain eternal “salvation” from the God of the Holy Bible, need to acknowledge being a “lost” sinner who is incapable of doing “anything” to justify themselves before a holy and perfect God (Job 25:4; Ps. 51:1-5; Rom. 1:20; 3:9-10, 23; 5:12; 6:23; Gal.

2:16; 3:22; Heb. 7:19). They will then believe, by faith alone, that the Lord Jesus paid in full, the penalty due for their sins and that He was buried, and bodily arose from the dead (Mt. 5:17-18; Jn. 2:18-21; 4:34; 11:25-26; 14:6; 17:4; 19:30; 20:29-30; Acts 4:10-12; Rom. 1:16-17; 3:24-28; 4:5; 5:1-11; 6:3-10; 8:33-34; 10:9-13; 1 Cor. 15:1-4; 2 Cor. 5:7; 1 Tim. 1:15; 2:5; 1 Pet. 1:23). Thus, salvation is a free gift to all who simply believe in the sufficiency of what the Lord Jesus did for them and is solely by the grace of God and nothing else (Rom. 5:12-21; Eph. 2:8-9)!

All false “gospel” teachers are under the curse of God! It was the apostle Paul who wrote, “. . . *there are some that . . . would pervert the gospel of Christ. But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed. As we said before, so say I now again, If any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed*” (Gal. 1:7-9).

It is the Lord Jesus Christ who is described as being the “good shepherd” (Ps. 23; Jn. 10:1-30), or the “great Shepherd” (Heb. 13:20), or the “chief Shepherd” (1 Pet. 5:4) of all those who *trust* Him as their personal Savior. “Then said Jesus unto them again, Verily, verily, I say unto you, I am the door of the sheep” (Jn. 10:7). He also said, “I am the door; by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture” (Jn. 10:9), and, “. . . Everyone that is of the truth heareth my voice” (Jn. 18:37). The ability and discernment to know the “truth” [the Lord Jesus Christ Himself], like salvation itself, is God given (1 Cor. 2). Otherwise, even the very elect [the 144,000 Jewish evangelists who will preach of the coming kingdom of the Lord Jesus prior to His Second Coming [2nd Advent] (Mt. 24:14; Rev. 6:9-11; 7:1-8)], would be “deceived” (Mt. 24:24).

“. . . Jesus saith . . . I am . . . **the truth** . . . no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.”  
(Jn. 14:6)!

## **The Third Warning**

(Matthew 7:21-28)

### **The Life**

One of the most *frightening* warnings in all of the Holy Bible is the third and final one with which the Lord Jesus Christ concluded His “Sermon on the Mount.” His warning was, “Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven, but he that doeth the will of my Father, who is in heaven” (Mt. 7:21). This warning seems to suggest that “salvation” can be *lost* and removes the “assurance” of salvation that the Christian is to be confident in having (Acts 20:28; 2 Cor. 1:21-22; Eph. 1:13; 4:30; 2 Tim. 2:19; 1 Jn. 5:13). Since “salvation,” once received, cannot be lost or taken away this warning simply tells us that not all who *profess* to be Christians are truly saved or born again (Jn. 3:3-7). Thus, they will not be *snatched out* when all believers are taken to Heaven in the Rapture (Mt. 7:22-27)!

This warning should cause the reader to ask questions such as: **1.** Who are these people who say “Lord, Lord,” but are not allowed into the kingdom of Heaven? **2.** Why did they think they were worthy of Heaven? **3.** What is the will of the Father? **4.** Can we even do the will of the Father? **5.** Can we ever be sure of having eternal salvation? The correct answers to these five questions can only come from a diligent search of the holy Scriptures (1 Jn. 4:1). It is vital for all to do so, since our eternal destiny is dependent upon having the correct answers (1 Cor. 11:28-32; 2 Cor. 13:5)! The answers to the aforementioned questions must begin by first identifying who these people are and to know the event being referred to when “that day” [the Rapture] will be fulfilled.

The “every one” in Matthew 7:21 must refer to those who think they are Christians and truly saved and going to Heaven. The “Lord” [master] to whom they are crying out can only be the Lord Jesus Christ. However, not all of them shall enter into the “kingdom of heaven.” The reason why is they did not do the *will* of God the Father. The *Age of Law* was fulfilled by the Lord Jesus Christ while on His cross at Calvary (Mt. 5:17; 27:50-51; Mk. 15:37-38; Jn. 7:19; 19:30) when He was separated [death] from God, *the Father* and God, *the Holy Spirit* for three hours and then gave up His spirit. It was at that moment when the *Age of Grace* began. Since then the *will* of God, the Father is for all to simply *believe* [trust] (Jn.3:14-18) that the sacrifice made by the Lord Jesus Christ on their behalf is sufficient to save them from the penalty they deserve for all of the sins they have or will ever commit against a holy God. The man hanging on a cross next to the Lord Jesus Christ was guilty of being a murderer and for sedition against Rome and for being a thief. He could do nothing [works] for his salvation other than to simply *believe* in the Lord Jesus (Lk. 23:39-43; Rom. 6:14). His *believing* was enough to have him become the very first man to obtain salvation in our current *Age of Grace* (Lk. 23:39-43).

The Lord Jesus Christ said “in that day” these people would cry out to Him. The day He is referring to can only be the one when the Rapture takes place. This cry out to Him is from those *professing* Christians who were left behind when the Lord Jesus Christ took His bride [the *Church*] to Heaven (Mt. 7:22-23; 24:37-41; 25:1-13; Lk. 17:26-30, 34-36; Jn. 14:1-3; 1 Cor. 15:51-53; 1 Th. 4:13-18). The professing Christians who are left behind will point out how they had prophesied and cast out demons and done many wonderful *works* in His name and participated in the sacrament of communion and attended Bible studies (Mt. 7:22; Lk. 13:26). But these works of theirs were done out of lawlessness [sin] and they are to depart from His presence since He never knew them (Mt. 7:23; 25:12; Lk. 13:25, 27)!

The Lord Jesus then said that whoever hears His sayings and does them will be compared to a man who built his house upon a “rock” (Mt. 7:24) and not upon “sand” (Mt. 7:26). He then uses the foundations of two different houses, built by two different men, to *illustrate* what the “faith” of each of the house builders was based upon (1 Cor. 3:11). The contrast is between a man who is a *true* Christian and another man who is a *professing* Christian! The “Rock,” in this illustration, represents the Lord Jesus Christ, *God, the Son*, who nurtured the Israelites during their *exodus* from Egypt and during the forty-years prior to their entering the promised land of

Canaan (1 Cor. 10:4). The Lord Jesus Christ is both the “cornerstone” of Zion (Isa. 28:16) and of the *Church*, which is an “assembly” of people comprised of both Jewish and Gentile believers in Him. He is also a *stumbling stone* to “unbelievers” (1 Pet. 2:4-8). The Lord Jesus declared Himself to be the *Rock* that He would build His Church [assembly] upon (Mt. 16:18). Thus, the salvation of the believer must be based *solely* upon the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ!

Therefore, the foundation of the wise [saved = true Christian] man’s house was a “rock” [the Lord Jesus Christ] in contrast to the foundation for the foolish [unsaved = professing Christian] man’s house being “sand” [works = religion]. The foundations of both houses were subject to natural climate conditions like rain, flood water, and wind (Mt. 7:24-27). Sand will change due to weather conditions while a rock will not! Thus, the house built upon a rock is secure and the man who builds his house on a rock is called *wise* by the Lord Jesus (Mt. 7:24).

The use of the word *wise* is usually applied to those who are “righteous” [saved]. There are many passages in the Scriptures that speak of *wisdom* and those who are *wise*. Usually those who are credited with having wisdom or of being wise are those who seek out the LORD [the self-existent One], by way of the holy Scriptures and keep His commandments (Prov. 2:1-9; 3:1-6; 8:14; Eph. 1:7-9, 17; Col. 1:9, 28; 2:1-3; 3:16; 2 Tim. 3:15; Jas. 3:13).

This story of the two men who each built a house for themselves is an *illustration* of the contrast between true Christians and professing Christians! The *true* Christian is one whose salvation is resting solely on what the Lord Jesus Christ did for him, while on the cross at Calvary, by way of faith alone. The *professing* Christian, on the other hand, is resting upon what they have done, are doing, or hope to do for the Lord Jesus *in addition* to what He has done for them. In other words, *religion*. This might include but by no means is limited to doing such things as joining a church, walk down an aisle, made Jesus Lord of their life, being baptized with water, had an experience, spoke in tongues, by repenting or something to *ensure* their salvation.

The Lord Jesus said that the man who hears the word of God and does not obey it is like a foolish man who builds his house upon sand (Mt. 7:26). When the word *foolish* is used to describe someone in the holy Scriptures, it usually means that they do not know the ways or the laws of God and they do works of lawlessness that are against the *Law of God*. Those described by this word are usually in a lost [unsaved] condition (Dt. 32:6, 21; Ps. 5:5; 39:8; 73:3, 22; 74:18, 22; Prov. 9:6, 13; 14:7; 15:7; 19:3; 24:9; Jer. 5:4, 21; 10:8; Ezek. 13:3; Mt. 25:1-13; Rom. 1:21-23; 2:20; 1 Cor. 1:18; 2:14; 1 Tim. 6:9; Ti. 3:3; 1 Pet. 2:15). The destiny of the wise [saved] and the destiny of the foolish [unsaved] is best described by the following portion of Scripture; **“The wise shall inherit glory, but shame shall be the promotion of fools” (Prov. 3:35).**

All *man-made religions* are in conflict with the clear teachings of the holy Scriptures! Thus, all *man-made religions* always oppose the revealed “will” of the God of the Holy Bible. All man-made religions teach that Heaven must be earned by “good” people. The Holy Bible teaches, in contrast, that Heaven is a *gift* to “bad” people. The *bad* people are those who acknow-

ledge they are sinful and know they can do nothing to justify themselves before a holy and sinless God. Thus, they are trusting, by faith alone, in what God has done for them, through the finished work of their Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ for their eternal “salvation.” The *good* people, in contrast, are those who *deem themselves* worthy of Heaven because of the bad things they are not guilty of doing and for the good things they have done or hope to do. In other words, they are trusting in their own efforts or their man-made religion to make them worthy of Heaven. These people have been deceived, since no man-made religion can ever guarantee entry into Heaven. Also, all who are “religious” are in bondage to sin (Lk. 18:9-14)! Thus, when the Lord Jesus Christ said, “*Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven, but he that doeth the will of my Father, who is in heaven*” (Mt. 7:21), He was referring to those who would NOT be trusting *solely* in His finished work, by faith alone, for their salvation. These people will also be relying upon their own good works or good life or their “religious” activities in His name as proof of their salvation and readiness to be taken by Him. This is why they would be “left behind” at the Rapture. They had built their house upon a foundation of sand otherwise known as *false religious teachings and personal works*.

Those who insist on placing their faith in their own good works and life or in religious teachings, traditions and liturgy until their death are not doing the *will* of God! They will eventually be “cut off” [separated] from the God of the Holy Bible and be tormented for their disobedience throughout eternity (Mt. 13:41-42; 25:41, 46; Rev. 14:10-11; 20:10, 15)! The apostle John wrote, “*And the world passeth away, and the lust of it; but he that doeth the will of God abideth forever*” (1 Jn. 2:17). The Lord Jesus said, “*For whosoever shall do the will of God, the same is my brother, and my sister, and my mother*” (Mk. 3:35).

The Lord Jesus Christ made an *atonement* for all of the sins of humanity (Jn. 3:16; Rom. 3:24-25; 5:9; Eph. 1:7; Col. 1:14, 20; 1 Pet. 2:24; Rev. 5:9). Thus, the will of God, the Father, for all of mankind, is to simply trust [believe], by faith alone, in the “atonement” made by the Lord Jesus Christ and in nothing else (Jn. 20:30-31; Acts 4:12; 15:11; 16:31). Those who refuse to do so, will not be taken at the Rapture [the snatching out of all “living” Christians by the Lord Jesus Christ]. When the Rapture does happen, it will be in the “twinkling of an eye” (Jn. 14:1-3; 1 Cor. 15:51-53; 1 Th. 4:13-18). The things people do in the name of their religion or beliefs or in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ will not count towards their salvation! Their *claim* of being a Christian will be denied by the Lord Jesus Himself (Mt. 7:21-23; Mt. 25:1-13; Lk. 13:24-27). They will have disobeyed *God, the Father* by allowing themselves to be deceived into believing a false gospel (Dt. 11:16; Mt. 24:4, 24; 1 Cor. 6:9; 15:33; Gal. 6:7; Eph. 5:6; 2 Th. 2:3; 2 Tim. 3:13; 1 Jn. 3:7; 2 Jn. 1:7). Imagine the shock of those who expected, upon their physical death, to open their eyes in Heaven, only to find themselves in the torments section of *Hades* instead (Lk. 16:19-31). I hope and pray this will not be true of any reader of this treatise. Maranatha!

“ . . . Jesus saith . . . I am . . . **the life**; no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.”

(Jn. 14:6)

(92)

# Appendix

# Scripture Briefings

by  
Robert E. Schoenle

All quoted Scripture is from the New Scofield Reference Bible.  
Copyright 1967 by Oxford University Press, Inc.  
Reprinted by permission.

Copyright 2020 by Robert E. Schoenle. All rights reserved.  
18138 Lake Worth Blvd., Port Charlotte, FL 33948

Email: [rschoenle2015@gmail.com](mailto:rschoenle2015@gmail.com)

Web Site: [www.endtimewarnings.net](http://www.endtimewarnings.net)

Web Site: [www.endtimewarnings.org](http://www.endtimewarnings.org)

## **Special Acknowledgment**

Special acknowledgment is gratefully given to Dr. Walter R. Martin, Director, and Gretchen Passantino, Senior Research Consultant, of *The Christian Research Institute*, for their invaluable contributions to this treatise.

# Appendix

## Table of Contents

Introduction	p. 96
For Your Information	p. 97-99
The Holy Bible	p. 100
God and the Holy Trinity	p. 101-102
The Lord Jesus Christ	p. 103-105
Satan	p. 106
Man	p. 107
Physical Death	p. 108
The Soul /Spirit	p. 109
The Resurrection	p. 110
The Atonement	p. 111
Hell	p. 112-113
Eternal Punishment	p. 114
Human Government	p. 115

# Introduction

The Lord Jesus warned, “Beware of false prophets [teachers], who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves” (Mt. 7:15). The apostle Paul also warned in Acts 20:29-30, “For I know this, that after my departing shall grievous wolves enter in among you, not sparing the flock. Also of your own selves shall men arise, speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples after them.”

There was another warning from the apostle Peter, “But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who secretly shall bring in destructive heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction. And many shall follow their pernicious ways ; . . .” (2 Pet. 2:1-2).

These warnings and others, carried throughout the *Old and New Testaments* of the Holy Scriptures, tell us that we are to be on guard to avoid deceptive and false teachings by heretical Bible teachers and prophets. As forewarned by the Lord Jesus Christ and the apostles Paul and Peter, many people today have been deceived into believing blasphemous and heretical teachings that are in conflict with the Holy Scriptures. These people may think that they are Christians and act as though they are Christians, and have been told that they are Christians, but are, in fact, not!

The most important question any professing Christian can ask themselves is this: “Upon what is my salvation based?” The answer to this question will determine their eternal destiny. This is why the apostle Paul advised professing Christians to, “Examine yourselves, whether you are in the faith; prove yourselves . . . .” (2 Cor. 13:5). But how are we to examine ourselves? The Lord Jesus gave the answer, as recorded in John 5:39, when He commanded, “Search the Scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life; and they are they which testify of me.”

The following material is offered to help you to search the Scriptures, as the people in the town of Berea did more than 1,900 years ago (Acts 17: 10-12). The example of the Bereans is one in which all people have been advised to follow. Therefore, we are to study the Scriptures (2 Tim. 2:15) and to search out and meditate upon them (1 Tim. 4:15-16). Now is the time to learn what the Scriptures has to say about God, mankind, sin, and salvation!

## For Your Information

The following is given to explain how and why it is possible for people to disagree over the same reading material. It also explains why the **Literal Method of Interpretation** is the only logical way to read all literature, including the Holy Bible. *Biblical Hermeneutics* by Milton S. Terry and *Protestant Biblical Interpretation* by Bernard Ramm are recommended to those interested in studying the subject of hermeneutics further.

### **Interpretation of the Holy Bible has gone in three directions:**

#### **1. Allegorical 2. Spiritual 3. Literal**

The *Allegorical School of Interpretation* says that beneath the obvious is the real meaning of the passage. The problem with this viewpoint is that everyone can interpret what they read any way they would like. This system of interpretation has no definite standard. All opinions have equal value. The result of this system of interpretation is confusion!

Example: What if everyone read their daily newspaper, using the Allegorical Method of Interpretation? The daily reports would be of no value, since everyone who read them could determine that they meant whatever they thought or wanted them to mean.

Three schools of teaching used the following allegorical methods of interpretation:

**a) Greek Allegorism:** The Greeks began this process, to be able to combine their religions and philosophies.

**b) Hebrew Allegorism:** This was also a combination of religion and philosophy. Only this time, it was comprised of the Mosaic Law and the Prophets with Greek philosophies.

**c) Christian and Patristic Allegorism:** Some early Christian leaders, like Origen, wanted to show that the Holy Scriptures could be harmonious with philosophy. Also, since the Holy Bible was a spiritual book, it required spiritual insight and application. Augustine was an allegorist, as was Jerome, who translated the Roman Catholic Bible known as *The Vulgate*.

Many professing Christians tend to *Spiritualize* certain passages in the holy Scriptures in their attempt to understand what they have read. They do so to support their preconceived beliefs and position concerning the subject or topic being studied or discussed. The problem with those who use the “spiritual method of interpretation” with the holy Scriptures is that they use no traditional or Biblical references to support their interpretation or understanding. They do not allow Scripture to interpret itself. This means that what they say and teach can only be verified by someone who agrees with their particular teachings without using any Scripture to do so.

For example, there have been many who have applied *The Parable of the Ten Virgins* to the nation of Israel and to the Jewish people. Those who do so, say that the people of whom the Lord Jesus Christ spoke of in this parable were “saved” and “unsaved” Jews. The reason why those who take this interpretive position cannot be correct is that the nation of Israel and her people have never been symbolically identified in Scripture as being “virgins.” Israel is described as the unfaithful and adulterous wife of Jehovah (Isa. 54:5; Jer. 3:20; Hos. 2:2, 7, 16) and never as a virgin. Thus, there is no way for the nation of Israel or for individual Jews to identify themselves, Scripturally or symbolically, with this parable upon hearing it.

A parable is a story told to illustrate and bring understanding of truth. By using stories of familiar things in the natural or material world, the Lord Jesus was able to teach important spiritual truths. Since only the Church is referred to as a virgin who is espoused to the Lord Jesus [the Bridegroom] (2 Cor. 11:2), this parable can only be about the assembly of believers referred to in other passages of Scripture as *the Church* (Rom. 16:5) or *the Body* (Rom. 12:5; Eph. 1:22-23) or *the Bride* of Christ (Rev. 19:7-9). Those who insist on spiritualizing what they read in the Scriptures can only come to false and confusing conclusions!

*The Literal School of Interpretation* says that we accept the literal rendering of a sentence unless there is something in the sentence that indicates otherwise. Ezra, a priest and a scribe (Ezra 7:6, 10, 12) was the founder of the literal interpretation of the Scriptures movement in the *Old Testament*. This movement began with the Israelites as described in the eighth chapter of the *Book of Nehemiah*. The religious leaders of the Jewish people during the first advent of the Lord Jesus were *literalists*. However, they had become very extreme in their interpretation of the Holy Scriptures. There were several other literal schools of interpretation with their own particular variations with two of these being the Syrian School of Antioch and the Devotional School.

It was during the Reformation Period that the *General Protestant Method of Interpretation* of the Holy Scriptures became prevalent. This method takes into consideration whether the word or passage is PLAIN LITERAL or FIGURATIVE LITERAL, with the context determining the best way to understand what has been read. As an example, if I said that I was so hungry that I could eat a horse, you would understand that I was speaking *figuratively*. In other words, you knew by the illustration that I was really hungry, but there was no way that I could literally eat a horse. You would understand that what I said, was to be taken in a *figurative literal* way. However, what if I said that I was so hungry I could eat a two-pound steak? You would have no problem in understanding and accepting the fact that I could, indeed, eat that much food in a *plain literal* way.

(98)

**Reasons for using and defending the  
Literal Method of Bible Interpretation:**

- It is the usual method of literary interpretation.
- All figures of speech depend upon a literal meaning for their interpretation.
- Most of the Holy Bible is understood when interpreted this way.

**The Literal Method of Interpretation is a check on the feelings and the imaginations of each individual.**

**Five principles involved in the *Literal Method of Bible Interpretation*:**

- The Law of Context - A passage cannot be separated from those near it.
- The Law of Comparisons - Scripture is compared with Scripture.
- The Law of Preference - A clear passage is preferred over the difficult one.
- Spelling, grammar and figure of speech must be considered in each passage.
- God revealed Himself to mankind using man's ways and culture.

There are five *literary forms* used in the Holy Bible, each of which must be approached in a different manner. They are: **1.** Apocalyptic **2.** Poetry **3.** Discourse **4.** Parable **5.** Prose Narrative

(99)

SUBJECT: **The Holy Bible**

*Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine:*

The Holy Bible is called the *Word of God*, because it is a faithful record of everything that the LORD [self-existent One] wanted mankind to know as a whole, even including those things that are evil and degenerate. The original [autograph] was written by men inspired by *God, the Holy Spirit*, the third Personality of the triune Godhead. The Holy Bible is infallible and inerrant making it free from any error concerning the supernatural, science, and history. The Holy Bible is the sole source of truth on planet Earth! The substance of the Holy Bible has been preserved for us and is complete. We are not to look for the writing or giving of any additional Scripture.

**Bible References:** (2 Tim. 3:16; 2 Pet. 1:21; Jude 1:3; Rev. 22:18-19).

(100)

**SUBJECT: God and the Holy Trinity**

*Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine:*

Within the nature of the one true God there are three distinct *Persons*. They are of the same substance, coequal, coexistent, coeternal, and forever unchangeable. These three distinct *Personalities* are known as the Father, the Son [Word], and the Holy Spirit and make up the triune Godhead of the one true God.

**One God:** Dt. 4:35; 6:4; 32:39; Isa. 43:10-11; 45:22; Mk. 12:32; 1 Tim. 2:5.

**Three Distinct Persons In One God:** Isa. 48:16; Mt. 28:19; 2 Cor. 13:14; Eph. 2:18; 5:18-20; 1 Pet. 1:2; Jude 1:20-21.

**The Godhead:** Acts 17:29; Rom. 1:20; Col. 2:9.

**Unchanging:** Ps. 102:26-27; Mal. 3:6; Heb. 1:12; 6:17; 13:8; Js. 1:17.

**Eternal:** Gen. 21:33; Dt. 32:40; 33:27; Ps. 90:2; 1 Tim. 1:17.

The following three questions are for those who challenge or deny the doctrine of the triune Godhead known as the Holy Trinity:

1. Is the Father identified as God? (Acts 2:33; 1 Cor. 8:6; Gal. 1:1,3; Phil.2:11; 1 Th. 1:1; 1 Pet. 1:2; 2 Pet. 1:17; 2 Jn. 1:3; Jude 1:1).
2. Is the Son [Word] identified as God? (Jn. 1:1, 14; 10:33; 20:28; 1 Tim. 3:16; Heb. 1:8; Titus 2:13; 1 Jn. 1:1-2).
3. Is the Holy Spirit identified as God? (Acts 5:3-4).

All three *Persons* are identified as God even though there is but one God (Dt. 4:35; 6:4; 32:39; Isa. 43:10-11; 45:22; Mk. 12:32; 1 Tim.2:5).

For those who continue to doubt the truth concerning God and the triune Godhead here are four more questions for them to answer:

4. Did the Father raise the Lord Jesus from the dead? (Gal.1:1; 1 Th. 1:10).
5. Did the Lord Jesus say He would raise Himself from the dead? (Jn.2:19-21).
6. Did the Holy Spirit raise the Lord Jesus from the dead? (Rom. 8:11).
7. Did God raise the Lord Jesus from the dead? (Acts 2:24,30,32; 4:10; 17:31).

As recorded in the Holy Scriptures, God, the Father; and God, the Son; and God, the Holy Spirit, all raised the Lord Jesus from the dead. For this to be true, all three would have to be ONE.

**Conclusion:** The word *God* sometimes refers to the entire triune Godhead, but at other times will refer to only one or two Persons of that Godhead. Therefore, the word *God* does not always have to be used in the same manner with the same breadth of scope.

(101)

It is the same with the word “space” that can be used of *one-dimensional space* [distance], or *two-dimensional space* [area], or of *three-dimensional space* [volume], and must be understood according to the context in which it is used. The fact of the matter is that *three-dimensional space* is made up of length, width, and height. Yet, it is possible to speak of each separately, because each is distinct. Neither length nor width nor height can exist independently of the other two and each are equally essential to the one indivisible whole.

So it is with the three Persons of the triune Godhead commonly known as the *Holy Trinity*, which make up the one true God. (Mt. 28:19; 1 Cor. 12:4-6; 2 Cor. 13:14; Eph. 2:18; 4:4-6; 5:18-20; 1 Pet. 1:2 Jude 1:20-21). Thus, the word, *God* can be and has been properly used in differing senses within the Holy Bible.

(102)

SUBJECT: **The Lord Jesus Christ**

*Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine:*

The Lord Jesus Christ is one person with two natures forever united. One nature is that of the eternal God, the Son, the second Person of the triune Godhead, and the other is that of man, in all respects human, “yet without sin.”

**Bible references asserting the Deity of the Lord Jesus Christ:**

(Jn. 1:1, 14; 8:58; 10:33; 20:28; Phil. 2:5-8; Col. 1:16-17; 1 Tim. 3:16; Titus 2:13; 1 Jn. 1:1-2).

**THE FIVE NATURAL ATTRIBUTES OF DEITY**

- 1. Unchanging: Jehovah** (Ps. 102:27; 119:89; Mal. 3:6; Heb. 6:17; Jn. 1:17). **Jesus** (Heb. 1:12; 13:8).
- 2. Eternal: Jehovah** (Gen. 21:33; Dt. 32:40; 33:27; Ps. 90:2; 93:2; 102:12; Lam. 5:19; Hab. 1:12). **Jesus** (Mic. 5:2; Jn. 1:1-2; 17:5; Col. 1:17; 1 Jn. 1:1; Rev. 22:13).
- 3. Omniscience: Jehovah** (Job 34:21; Ps. 139; 147:5; Prov. 5:21; 15:3; Jer. 16:17; Heb. 4:13). **Jesus** (Mt. 9:4; Jn. 1:47-48; 2:24-25; 4:29; 6:64; 16:30; 21:17).
- 4. Omnipresence: Jehovah** (Job 28:24; Ps. 139:7-10; Prov. 15:3; Jer. 23:23-24; Amos 9:2-4). **Jesus** (Mt. 18:20; 28:20; Acts 18:10).
- 5. Omnipotence: Jehovah** (Gen. 17:1; Ex. 6:3; Jer. 32:17; 2 Cor. 6:18). **Jesus** (Mt. 28:18; Jn. 3:35; Rev. 1:8).

**THE TWO OFFICES OF DEITY**

- 1. Creator: Jehovah** (Gen. 1:1, 21, 27; 2:4, 7; Neh. 9:6; Job 38:4; Prov. 3:19; Rev. 4:11).

**Jesus** (Jn. 1:3; Col. 1:16; Heb. 1:2, 10; 2:10).

**2. Preserver: Jehovah** (Neh. 9:6; Ps. 36:6). **Jesus** (Col. 1:17; Heb. 1:3).

### THE THREE PREROGATIVES OF DEITY

**1. Forgives Sin: Jehovah** (Num. 14:19; 2 Ch. 7:14; Ps. 32:5; 78:38; 85:2; Jer. 31:34; 36:3).

**Jesus** (Mt. 9:2; Mk. 2:5; Lk. 5:20; 7:48).

**2. Executes Judgment: Jehovah** (Ex. 12:12; 32:33; Num. 33:4; Ps. 9:7; Ezek. 5:8; 30:19).

**Jesus** (Jn. 5:22; Acts 17:31; Rom. 14:10; 2 Ch. 5:10; 2 Tim. 4:1, 8).

**3. Has Life Giving Power: Jehovah** (Gen. 1:27; 2:7; 21:1; 25:21; Lk. 1:13; 1 Tim. 6:13).

**Jesus** (Jn. 1:4; 5:21; 11:25-26, 43-44; 17:2).

(103)

Those who deny that the Lord Jesus Christ was Jehovah in human form and the *Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine* about Him find themselves in a dilemma concerning His Person. The reason for their dilemma is that the Scriptures are explicit in telling us that all the attributes, offices and prerogatives, which can only belong to Jehovah, also belong to the Lord Jesus Christ. The usual response to this dilemma is to ignore those passages that tell of His Deity and refer only to those passages which speak of His humanity.

There are those in some pseudo Christian cults who have attempted to explain these passages, which clearly teach the Deity of the Lord Jesus, by stating that the Lord Jesus was a god. Those who accept this viewpoint, in effect, believe in Jehovah God, who is the big God, and Jesus god, who is the little god, and who is comparable to Jehovah. This viewpoint disregards the reply given to those who have asked, "Who is like Jehovah?" (Ex. 15:11; Ps. 77:13; Isa. 40:18, 25; 46:5; Mic. 7:18). The answer to this question has always been that there is none like Him (Dt. 4:35; Job 41:33; Isa. 37:16; 46:9). Therefore, the Lord Jesus Christ and Jehovah being of the same substance in power and eternity must be equal and one.

There are pseudo Christian cults and man-made religions who deny the Lord Jesus Christ was God in a human form! The following arguments are given to prove, from the Holy Bible, that the Lord Jesus Christ is, indeed, God.

**1.** The Lord Jesus is the second Person of the triune Godhead, also known as the Holy Trinity, which is the only way to explain how Jehovah could send Jehovah (Isa. 48:12,16; Zech. 2:8-11).

**2.** The divine name "Immanuel" as stated in Isaiah 7:14, can only be translated *God with us*. This is the same name the Lord Jesus is called in Matthew 1:23.

3. Jehovah declared Himself to be the first and the last (Isa. 41:4; 44:6; 48:12). The Lord Jesus declared Himself to be the first and the last (Rev. 1:8, 17; 21:6; 22:13). Therefore, there are either two firsts and two lasts, or both Jehovah and the Lord Jesus Christ are one and the same.

4. Jehovah has commanded that we are to worship no other gods other than Himself (Ex. 34:14), yet commands the angels to worship the Lord Jesus (Heb. 1:6). The Lord Jesus declares that only God is to be served and worshipped (Lk. 4:8), yet accepted worship (Mt. 8:2; 14:33; 28:9; Jn. 20:28). In order for there to be no contradiction, Jehovah and the Lord Jesus Christ must be one and the same.

5. In Hebrews 1:8, God calls Him God. However, the Scriptures declare that there has been no other God and that there will be no other God other than Jehovah (Dt. 32:39; Isa. 43:10-11; 45:22). Once again, for there to be no contradiction in the Holy Scriptures, Jehovah and the Lord Jesus Christ must be one and the same.

(104)

6. The Lord Jesus Christ, according to the Holy Scriptures, claimed to be God (Jn. 10:30-33; 14:8-9; 17:5) and accepted worship (Mt. 14:33; 28:9; Jn. 20:28-29). For Him to do either of the two would have been blasphemous if He was not God. He also would have been a fraud, if He was not God, unless He was either: **1) Deluded** or **2) Deceived** or **3) Hallucinating** or **4) Classically Insane**. Who or what He is, must be individually decided by each of us (Mt. 16:15).

**Conclusion:** A search (Acts 17:10-12) and study (Lk. 16:29-31; 24:25-27; 24:44-46; Jn. 5:46-47; 20:30-31; 21:25) of the Holy Bible proves that the Lord Jesus Christ truly was God in a human body. Those who deny the Deity of the Lord Jesus do not give Him the honor that is due Him (Jn. 5:23). Thus, they do not honor the Father who sent Him and remain in their sins, unsaved.

(105)

SUBJECT: **Satan**

*Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine:*

Satan was a great and powerful angel known as Lucifer until he rebelled against God and challenged His sovereignty. This was the beginning of sin in the universe! Satan brought both sin and death (physical death and spiritual death) upon man through the Fall of Adam in the *Garden of Eden*. He has been the ruler of this world [Earth] ever since. His destiny will be everlasting torment with all of his followers.

**Bible References:** (Gen. 3:1, 4; 1 Ki. 22:21-22; Job 1:6-12, 15-19; 2:1-7; Isa. 14:12-15; Ezek. 28:11-19; Zech. 3:1; Mt. 4:1-11; 10:28; 13:19, 39; Lk. 10:18; Jn. 8:44; 14:30; 2 Cor. 4:4; 11:3, 14-15; Eph. 2:2; Col. 2:15; 1 Th. 2:18; 2 Th. 2:9; 1 Tim. 4:1-3; Heb. 2:14; 1 Pet. 5:8; 2 Pet. 2:4; 1 Jn. 3:8; 5:19; Jude 1:6; Rev. 12:9-10; 16:14; 20:1-3, 7-15).

Some pseudo Christian cults and false religions teach that Satan is not an actual being, or that he is a son of God, or that his destiny will be annihilation with all of his followers. These

teachings are all false and unbiblical!

**Conclusion:** The Scriptures are explicit about the person and work of Satan and his eternal destiny. He will endure everlasting torment in the “Lake of Fire.” This place, that is called the *Lake of Fire*, was created by God specifically for Satan and his angels (Mt. 25:41).

(106)

SUBJECT: **Man**

*Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine:*

Mankind is a creation of God, created in God’s spiritual image, making man an immortal soul/spirit possessing a physical form with a free will. God created the first man and named him Adam. When Adam ate the forbidden fruit, he deliberately disobeyed the edict of God (Gen. 2:15-17; 3:6, 8-12; Ps. 51:5; 1 Cor. 15:21-22; 1 Tim.2:14) This caused Adam to acquire a sinful [rebellious] nature that became an intrinsic part of his genetic makeup or DNA, which would then be passed on to all progeny having a human father. Thus, “. . . *by one man . . . all have sinned* “ (Rom. 5:12). Eve, however, did not sin when she ate the forbidden fruit while in the Garden of Eden because she had been deceived by Satan (Gen. 3:1-6, 13, 15; 2 Cor. 11:3; 1 Tim.

2:14). Thus the sinful nature of mankind and with which ALL children are born, can only be passed on by men! This is why the Lord Jesus Christ had to be born without having a human father but have a human mother making Him the one and only *God-man*.

Mankind was saved [redeemed] from the penalty of sin by the substitutionary death [separation] of the Lord Jesus Christ from the other two members of the triune Godhead while on the cross at Calvary. Salvation is obtained only by the grace of God when one trusts, by faith alone, *solely* in the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ. All those who reject salvation through the grace of God and the shed blood of the Lord Jesus Christ will be consciously tormented and separated from God throughout eternity [forever].

**Bible References:** (Gen. 1:26-27; 3:1, 17-19; 5:1; Job 32:8; Eccl. 3:21; 12:7; Mt. 26:28; Jn. 3:3-16; Acts 7:59; 20:28; Rom. 5:9, 12; 10:9-10; Col. 1:14, 20; Heb. 9:14; 1 Pet. 1:18-19; 1 Jn. 1:7; 5:11-12; Rev. 1:5; 7:14; 21:8).

Some pseudo Christian cults and man-made religions teach that God is a *physical being*, or that the soul of man is not immortal. They might also teach that immortality, or eternal life in God's Kingdom, is given only to those who meet His requirements for salvation. Those teachings are all false!

**Conclusion:** God is a *spirit being* and not a *physical being* (Jn. 4:24). The Holy Bible reveals that salvation is obtained only by the grace of God, solely through faith, in the finished work of the Lord Jesus Christ alone. This is the only way that anyone will ever inherit the Kingdom of God (Rom. 4:5; Eph. 2:8-9).

(107)

**SUBJECT: Physical Death**

*Biblical Historical Christian Doctrine:*

When a human body dies, it is not the end of conscious existence for the *soul/spirit* within. Physical death is but a change of place or conditions in which conscious existence continues for the soul/spirit.

**Biblical Word Meanings:**

The Biblical definition or meaning for the word "death" is SEPARATION.

The Biblical definition or meaning for the word "life" is CONNECTION.

**There are TWO *deaths* [separations] spoken of in the Holy Scriptures:**

1. The first death is separation from the body by the human soul/spirit.

(Gen. 35:18; 2 Sam. 12:23; 1 Ki. 17:21-22; Ps. 73:24; Eccl. 12:7; Isa 14:9-17; Ezek. 32:18-32; Hab. 2:4; Mk. 9:43; Acts 7:59; 9:36-42; 1 Cor.15:55; 2 Cor. 5:8; Phil. 1:21-23; 2 Tim. 4:18; 1 Pet. 4:19; 2 Pet. 2:9; Jude 1:14; Rev. 6:9).

2. The second death is eternal separation from God by the human soul/spirit.

(Jn. 7:33-34; 8:21; 2Pet.2:17; Jude1:13; Rev.2:11; 19:20; 20:6,10,14-15; 21:8).

**Among the false teachings of some pseudo Christian cults and man-made religions is that when the physical body dies:**

- All consciousness and awareness ends for both the body and the soul/spirit until the resurrection of the dead.
- At the resurrection of the dead, those individuals who have met God's requirements for salvation will then be given immortality and eternal life in God's Kingdom.
- At the resurrection of the dead, those individuals who have not met God's requirements for salvation will be destroyed or annihilated [cease to exist].

**Conclusion:** There is no single or collective translation of Greek or Hebrew words in any reputable lexicon or dictionary to substantiate the heretical view that *death* is the end of consciousness or destruction. Physical death never means annihilation [to bring to nothing], and there is not one word in the original languages to prove that it does!

(108)

SUBJECT: **The Soul/Spirit**

*Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine:*

The "soul/spirit" of mankind was created by God and is an eternal entity. Made in the image of God, the soul/spirit shall go on being somewhere either in conscious joy or in conscious sorrow forever.

**Bible References:** (Gen. 1:26-27; 2:7; 5:1; Isa. 66:24; Mt. 5:22, 29-30; 8:11-12; 10:28; 13:42-50; 18:8-9; 22:13; 25:41, 46; Mk. 9:42-48; Lk. 13:24-29; 16:19-31; 20:36; 2 Pet. 2:17; Jude 1:13; Rev. 14:9-11; 19:20; 20:10, 12-15; 22:5).

**Some pseudo Christian cults and man-made religions teach the following:**

1. The soul/spirit of man is not eternal, but temporal or mortal.
2. That upon physical death, the soul/spirit ceases to exist.
3. That upon physical death, the soul/spirit returns to the atmosphere and to the *god* who gave it.

**All of these teachings are false and unbiblical!**

**Conclusion:** If the soul/spirit of mankind did cease to exist upon the death of the body, then the accounts described and recorded in 2 Kings 4:18-37; 13:21; Matthew 9:18-26; Luke 7:12-15; 16:19-31; John 11:14-44; Acts 9:36-41; and Acts 20:9-12 could not have taken place. Also, the Lord Jesus could not have spoken with Elijah and Moses as recorded in Matthew 17:3; Mark 9:4; and Luke 9:30-31.

(109)

SUBJECT: **The Resurrection**

*Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine:*

The Lord Jesus Christ was raised physically, from the dead, after paying the ransom for all of the sins of mankind, whether they were committed in the past or present or future. He ascended visibly and physically into Heaven and will return the same way. A study and comparison of Zechariah 12:10 and Zechariah 14:4 with Matthew 24:30; Acts 1:9-11; and Revelation 1:7 will confirm this truth.

**Bible References:** (Isa. 53:4-6; Mt. 24:23-24, 30; Lk. 21:27; 24:39-43, 50-51; Jn. 2:19-22; 3:16-17; Acts 1:9-11; 2 Cor. 5:18-19; 2 Th. 1:7-10; 1 Tim. 2:5-6; 6:14; Titus 2:13; Heb. 2:9; 1 Pet. 3:18; 1 Jn. 2:2; Rev. 1:7).

**The Jehovah's Witnesses**, a false Christian cult, teaches that the Lord Jesus Christ was resurrected an invisible spirit creature after offering the ransom for "obedient" mankind. They also teach that after the resurrection of the dead, 144,000 people will inherit the heavenly kingdom of God in a *spiritual form*, with the rest of those who have been obedient to Jehovah returning to earth to rule in a physical body.

By teaching that the Lord Jesus Christ was resurrected as an invisible spirit and that the majority of the Jehovah's Witnesses will return to earth after their own resurrection in a physical body, they contradict and deny Philippians 3:21 and 1 John 3:2. This is but one example of how a pseudo Christian cult has perverted the clear teachings of the Holy Scriptures.

**Conclusion:** The word *resurrection* in the Hebrew and Greek languages, always refers to the physical form and never to the soul or the spirit! The resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ was of His physical body, which was proven, by Him, beyond any doubt, as recorded in Luke 24:39 and John 20:27-28.

(110)

**SUBJECT: The Atonement**

*Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine:*

The atonement through the shed blood of the Lord Jesus Christ forever removed man's slavery to sin and Satan, brought redemption, and reconciled man with God to all who accept it by faith alone.

**Bible References:** (Lev. 17:11; Jn. 1:29; Rom. 3:25; 5:9; 10:9-10; Eph. 1:7; Col. 1:14, 20; Heb.

9:22; 13:20; 1 Pet. 1:19; 2:24; 1 Jn. 1:7; Rev. 5:9; 12:11).

Pseudo Christian cults and man-made religions with their heretical teachers always add a “but” to the atoning work of the Lord Jesus Christ! They teach that salvation comes by faith, *but* you must do something in addition for it to be genuine, such as be baptized in water or speak in tongues or obey God or do various good works or be a member of a particular church or make Jesus Lord of your life or repent or live a holy life. Some teach that having an *experience* is necessary for true salvation.

The epistle [letter] to the Romans, along with the epistles [letters] to the Galatians and Ephesians, are acknowledged as being great doctrinal books for the Christian faith. Yet, nowhere do they teach that water baptism or obedience or any other type or form of works is essential for salvation. This was also true when in Acts 15:1, a dispute arose concerning the subject of salvation. This dispute was concluded as recorded in Acts 15:35. Again, we find that no mention is made to water baptism or any other form of works as being necessary for one to be saved.

The apostle Paul, who is thought by many to be the greatest Christian missionary and evangelist of all, declared that Christ did not send him to water baptize anyone (1 Cor. 1:17). If water baptism was indeed necessary for one’s salvation, this would be a very grave heresy. The Holy Bible is consistent with regard to the subject of salvation. The man who was crucified alongside the Lord Jesus had no time to be baptized in water or to do any good works. He only had time to *believe* (Jn. 20:30-31). He acknowledged that he deserved his punishment (Lk. 23:41a) and in the sinless character of the Lord Jesus (Lk. 23:41b) and in His Deity and the fact that life would continue after death with the Lord Jesus being the king of a future kingdom (Lk. 23:42). His confession caused the Lord Jesus to promise him that he would be with Him in the *Paradise* section of hades/sheol (Lk. 16:19-31) that very day (Lk. 23:43).

**Conclusion:** Most people are either unwilling or unable to acknowledge the fact that, according to the holy Scriptures, *Heaven is not a reward for good people, but a gift to bad people* who are believing [trusting] that the penalty they deserve for all of their sins against a holy creator God was paid, in full, by the Lord Jesus Christ. The atonement was wholly of God, regardless of any argument to the contrary (2 Cor. 5:21), completely by grace, not by water baptism or by any other type of work (Rom. 4:5; Eph. 2:5-13).

(111)

SUBJECT: **Hell**

*Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine:*

The English word *Hell* is “transliterated” from the Greek word *Hades*. The Holy Bible declares that this is a place of torment where sinners [unsaved individuals] remain after physical death [separation from the body by the soul/spirit], until their day of judgment.

**Bible References:** (Isa. 66:24; Mt. 5:22, 29-30; 8:12; 10:28; 13:42, 49-50; 18:8-9; 22:13; Mk.

9:42-48; Lk. 13:24-28; Rev. 14:9-11; 19:20; 20:10, 15).

Pseudo Christian cults and man-made religions usually deny the existence of a literal *hades* or “hell” where conscious souls/spirits are in torment. Some teach that the *hades* [hell] described in the Holy Bible is simply “the grave, a place of rest” where the departed sleep until the resurrection of the dead, when they will be judged by God. These teachings are false!

The Hebrew word *sheol*, as it is used in the Old Testament, refers to the same place as *hades* in the New Testament. It is the place where the spirits of the physically dead go. It is often spoken of as being the grave, where all human activities on the earth end (Gen. 37:35; 42:38; Job 14:13; Ps. 88:3). Thus, to the man “on the earth” with no choice, but to determine by what he sees, *sheol* [hades] seems no more than the grave. It seems to be the total end of awareness, not only of the activities of life, but also of existence itself (Eccl. 9:5, 10). But Scripture tells us that *sheol* [hades] is a place in which the wicked are conscious (Ps. 9:17; 55:15) and can speak (Isa. 14:9-11; Ezek. 32:17-21). It is also described as a place of sorrow (2 Sam. 22:6; Ps. 18:5). When Jonah was in the belly of the great fish, it was like him being in the grave (Jonah 2:2).

The Hebrew word, *sheol*, of the Old Testament, and the Greek word, *hades*, of the New Testament are both used in the same way to describe this place of sorrow and torment for conscious soul/spirits awaiting the “Great White Throne” judgment. This judgment is described in Revelation 20:11-15. Almost all pseudo Christian cults and man-made religions reject this clear teaching of Scripture. This is why they choose not to believe the story of the two men that is recorded in Luke 16:19-31, as told by the Lord Jesus Christ. Since they have chosen not to believe the account of these two men who lived on the earth and physically died to be true, they have concluded that it is a PARABLE.

Thus, the question: What is a parable? A parable is a story told to illustrate and bring understanding of truth. By using stories of familiar things in the natural or material world, the Lord Jesus Christ was able to teach important spiritual truths, such as the sower of the seed and of the end of the age (Mt. 13:1-52).

The importance of this story about the beggar Lazarus and the rich man cannot be over-emphasized. Without this story we would not know that *sheol* or *hades* [hell] consisted of three

(112)

sections: **1.** a section of torment. **2.** a section of comfort, called paradise (Lk. 23:39-43). **3.** a great gulf separating the other two sections from each other.

It answers questions like how King David knew he would be reunited with his dead baby son (2 Sam. 12:13-23). It reveals what happened to the saints of the *Old Testament* like Noah, Abraham, and Moses after their physical death since the blood of sacrificed animals could only cover their sins and not remove them. This is why it was necessary for the Lord Jesus to shed His blood so that the sins of all sinners could be paid for in full and be removed (Heb. 10:1-18) and make them worthy of being taken to Heaven (Eph. 4:7-10). It also explains where the Lord Jesus

had been prior to His resurrection, since He had not yet ascended to His Father (Jn. 20:16-17).

If the story of Lazarus and the rich man is not to be accepted as an actual account of what happened to these two men after they physically died, then two questions must be asked and answered:

**1. Why would the Lord Jesus Christ describe a situation and speak of a place such as “hell” [hades/sheol] that did not exist to illustrate a truth?**

**2. Why would the Lord Jesus Christ tell a lie or spin a yarn to illustrate a truth?** To lie is to sin, regardless of the motive! Yet, we know that the Lord Jesus Christ had no sin (2 Cor. 5:21; Heb. 4:15; 1 Pet. 2:22). Thus, this story has to be a true account of what took place with these two men after their physical life ended on planet Earth.

**Conclusion:** God is not willing for any to perish (2 Pet. 3:9). His love for sinners is why the Lord Jesus Christ paid the penalty for all who would trust Him as Savior, by faith alone (Jn. 3:16; 1 Tim. 1:15), so they might be saved from hell [hades/sheol] and the “lake of fire.” Also, the Lord Jesus Christ **NEVER** used personal names in parables, such as Lazarus or Abraham or Moses!

(113)

**SUBJECT: Eternal Punishment**

*Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine:*

Eternal punishment consists of being separated from the presence of God by living and conscious souls/spirits who are totally alone in absolute silence and darkness with the memories of their life on earth. It is the penalty for all those who rebelled against the will of God, in whatever age they lived.

**Bible References:** (1 Sam. 15:22-23; Mt. 7:21; 13:42; 25:41,46; Heb. 10:1-18; Jude vv. 5-7, 11-13; Rev. 14:10-11; 20:10, 15).

Some man-made religions teach that sinners, after their judgment by God, will be punished by being annihilated [cease to be or cease to exist]. A comparison of Revelation 19:20 with Revelation 20:10 reveals that after spending more than 1,000 years in the *Lake of Fire*, the two men known as the “beast” [the Antichrist] and the “false prophet” are joined by Satan, who will then be tormented forever and ever like them.

Gehenna was the place in the valley of Hinnom where, in the past, human sacrifices had been offered by the people of Israel (2 Ki. 23:10; 2 Ch. 33:6; Jer. 7:31; 19:2-6). During the days of the Lord Jesus Christ, a fire burned in that location continuously. This fire was fed from the rubbish and other matter disposed there. Because of the continuous fire in Gehenna, the Lord Jesus used it as an illustration of a place with an UNENDING fire to those with whom He spoke. It was a place which would be the final destination of the unrighteous and the penalty for their sins [rebellion] against God. Gehenna is identical in meaning with the *Lake of Fire* told of in the *Book of Revelation*.

**Conclusion:** Roman Catholics are told that *Purgatory* is a place in which those who have died in the grace of God expiate their own sins by suffering temporarily for them. The teaching of *Purgatory* denies and contradicts the historic christian doctrines of the *Atonement* and *Eternal Punishment*. It also makes incomplete the work of the Lord Jesus Christ for the salvation of all sinners. The false teaching of *Purgatory* has no Scriptural support! Tragically, many have been deceived with this and other false teachings of Roman Catholicism.

(114)

SUBJECT: **Human Government**

*Biblical Historic Christian Doctrine:*

No ruler exercises control, except as God permits. Under normal circumstances, the Christian is to be obedient to the laws of the land. This does not mean that he is to obey regulations that are immoral or anti-christian. In such cases, it is the Christian’s duty to obey God rather than men.

**Bible References:** (Dan. 3:16-18; 4:17; Mt. 22:21; Acts 5:29; Rom. 13:1-7; 1 Cor. 12:28; Titus 3:1; 1 Pet. 2:13-14).

There are pseudo Christian cults and man-made religions, such as “Jehovah’s Witnesses,” who teach that any and all forms of human governments are the visible organizations of the devil. They also teach that any allegiance to a human government is a violation of the allegiance owed to God and to the Holy Scriptures. This false teaching has caused great hardship and grief and loss of life for many people throughout the years!

**Conclusion:** Rulers and human government are clearly sanctioned by God and to deny this is wholly against the *Word of God* (2 Pet.2:10; Jude 1:8).